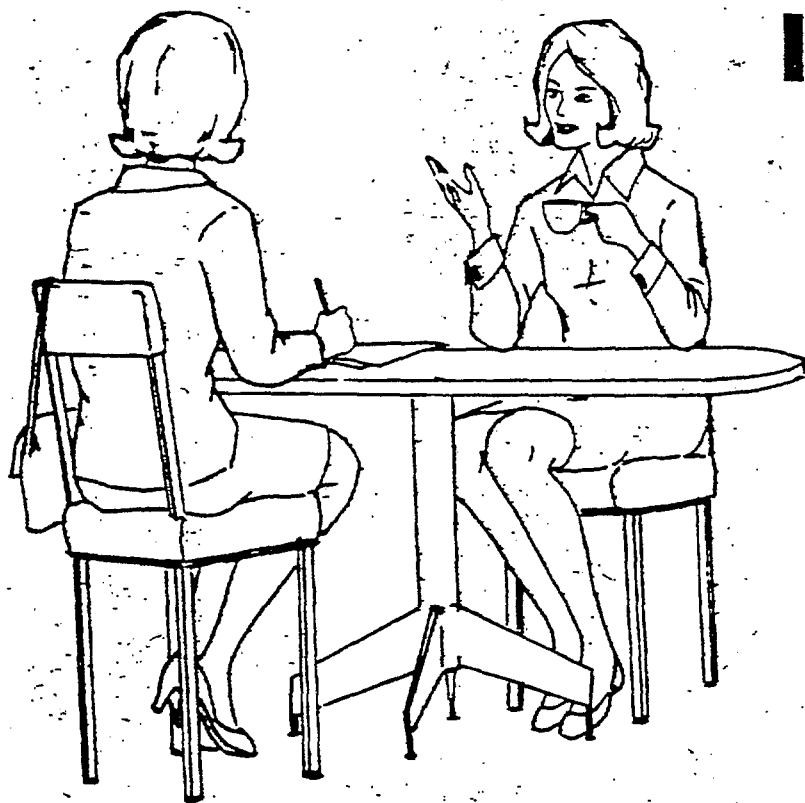


HIS-100
(1973)

HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY

Interviewer's

Manual



U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Social and Economic Statistics Administration
BUREAU OF THE CENSUS
Acting as Collecting Agent for U.S. Public Health Service

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

PART A

THE HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY AND YOU

CHAPTER 1. DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY.....	A1-1
A. Purpose of the Health Interview Survey.....	A1-1
1. General.....	A1-1
2. Examples of uses of the data.....	A1-2
a. Helps give direction to health expenditures.....	A1-2
b. Occurrence and severity of illness and disability..	A1-2
c. Control of accidents.....	A1-3
d. Health of the aged.....	A1-3
e. Health education and research.....	A1-3
f. Health facilities - hospital care, rehabilitation,	
insurance, etc.	A1-4
g. Factors related to various diseases.....	A1-4
3. Who uses the data.....	A1-4
B. Sponsorship of the survey.....	A1-4
1. The Health Interview Survey (HIS).....	A1-4
2. The Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (HANES)....	A1-5
3. The Hospital Discharge Survey (HDS).....	A1-5
4. The Health Records Survey (HRS).....	A1-5
C. Design of the HIS sample.....	A1-5
1. Selection of sample PSU's.....	A1-5
2. Sample ED's and segments.....	A1-6
3. Sample units.....	A1-6
4. Sample of newly constructed units.....	A1-6
5. Sample of special places.....	A1-6
6. The quarterly sample.....	A1-6
D. Scope of the survey.....	A1-7
E. Information accorded confidential treatment.....	A1-7
CHAPTER 2. YOUR JOB PERFORMANCE IN HIS.....	A2-1
A. General.....	A2-1
B. Basic field duties.....	A2-1
C. Additional duties.....	A2-1
D. Standards of performance for interviewers.....	A2-2
1. Production standards.....	A2-2

	<u>Page</u>
a. Planning your travel route.....	A2-2
b. Reduction of callbacks.....	A2-2
c. Efficient conduct of interviews.....	A2-3
2. Quality of interviewing.....	A2-3
a. Interviewer's error rate.....	A2-3
b. Field evaluation of interviewer's work.....	A2-3
3. Performance rating.....	A2-3

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

PART D

HOW TO INTERVIEW HIS

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION.....	D1-1
A Description of Materials.....	D1-1
1 HIS-1 Questionnaire.....	D1-1
2 Flashcard Booklet.....	D1-3
3 Calendar Card.....	D1-4
B Use of Materials and Interviewing Sequence.....	D1-5
C General Interviewing Instructions.....	D1-6
1 Symbols, Type Face, and Use of Pronouns.....	D1-6
2 How to Make Entries.....	D1-8
3 More Than One Questionnaire.....	D1-12
4 Footnotes and Comments.....	D1-13
5 Recording Answers When Received.....	D1-14
CHAPTER 2. HOUSEHOLD PAGE.....	D2-1
Item 1, Book of Books.....	D2-2
Items 2 through 5, Identification.....	D2-3
Item 6, Address.....	D2-4
Item 7, Year Built.....	D2-5
Item 8, Type of Living Quarters.....	D2-7
Question 9, Coverage.....	D2-8
Item 10, Questions 11 and 12, Tenure and Land Use.....	D2-9
Question 13, Number of Rooms.....	D2-13
Question 14, Number of Bedrooms.....	D2-14
Question 15, Telephone Number.....	D2-15
Items 16 and 17, Interview Observed, Interviewer's Name and Code.....	D2-16
Item 18, Noninterviews.....	D2-17
Item 19, Record of Calls.....	D2-18
Item 20, Record of Callbacks Required.....	D2-22
Items 21 and 22, Record of Additional Calls.....	D2-24
CHAPTER 3. PROCBE PAGES.....	D3-1
A Eligible Respondent for Questions 1 and 2.....	D3-1
B Eligible Respondent for Remaining Part of Questionnaire and Supplements.....	D3-1

	<u>Page</u>
1 17 or 18 Year Olds.....	D3-1
C Children.....	D3-2
D Adults Not Related.....	D3-2
E Exception to Eligible Respondent Rule.....	D3-2
F Return Call May Be Necessary.....	D3-2
Question 1, Household Membership.....	D3-3
Question 2, Relationship.....	D3-12
Question 3, Date of Birth, Age, Race, and Sex.....	D3-14
Item C and Reference Dates.....	D3-16
Selecting the Sample Person.....	D3-19
Item H, At Home.....	D3-20
Questions 4-8, Two-Week Activity Limitation.....	D3-21
Question 9, Condition Causing Two-Week Limitation.....	D3-28
Question 10, Two-Week Accidents or Injuries.....	D3-30
Question 11, Two-Week Dental Visits.....	D3-32
Question 12, Twelve-Month Dental Visits.....	D3-33
Question 13, Two-Week Doctor Visits.....	D3-35
Question 14, Two-Week Shots, X-Rays, Tests, and Examinations.....	D3-37
Question 15, Two-Week Medical Advice by Phone.....	D3-38
Question 16, Condition Causing Two-Week Medical Advice...	D3-39
Question 17, Twelve-Month Doctor Visits.....	D3-41
Questions 18 and 19, Major Activity.....	D3-43
Question 20, Limitation of Major Activity for Children 1-5 Years of Age.....	D3-45
Question 21, Limitation of Activity for Children Under One Year of Age.....	D3-46
Question 22, Retired or "17 Something Else".....	D3-47
Question 23, Limited in Kind or Amount of Work or Housework.....	D3-48
Questions 24 and 25, "6-16 Something Else," and "Going to School".....	D3-49
Question 26, Limited in ANY WAY.....	D3-50
Question 27, How Long Limited and Cause.....	D3-51
Question 28, Hospitalizations Since Specified Date.....	D3-54
Question 29, Stays in Nursing Homes, Etc.	D3-55
Question 30, Check on Question 28.....	D3-56
Question 31, Condition List.....	D3-58
Question 32, General Health Question.....	D3-60
Item R, Respondent.....	D3-61
 CHAPTER 4. CONDITION PAGE.....	 D4-1
A General Procedure.....	D4-1
B Order of Filling Condition Pages.....	D4-1
C Extra Questionnaires Needed for More Than Seven Conditions..	D4-1
D Types of Reporting Problems.....	D4-1

	<u>Page</u>
1 Dental Conditions.....	D4-1
2 Pregnancy and Childbirth.....	D4-2
3 Menstruation and Menopause.....	D4-2
4 Illness Resulting From Vaccination or Immunization.....	D4-2
5 Mental Illness.....	D4-2
6 Operations.....	D4-2
7 Reaction to Drugs.....	D4-3
8 Caution about Deciding Two Conditions Are the Same.....	D4-3
E Questions 3a-e, Condition Details.....	D4-4
F If More Than One Condition is Given in Item 1 and Question 3	D4-4
G Questions 4-8, Restricted Activity Past Two Weeks.....	D4-5
1 Refer to Calendar Card.....	D4-5
2 Injuries Occurring Less Than Three Months Ago.....	D4-5
3 In Bed or in a Hospital.....	D4-5
4 Check for Number of Days Reported in Questions 7 and 8...	D4-6
5 Check Between Questions 5, 6, 7, and 8.....	D4-6
6 Differences Between Restricted Activity Days in Probe Questions 4-8 and on the Condition Page.....	D4-6
H Questions 20-24, Accidents and Injuries.....	D4-6
1 Multiple Injuries.....	D4-6
2 Separate Accident Requires a Separate Condition Page.....	D4-6
3 Condition Caused by an Accident That Happened More Than Three Months Ago.....	D4-6
4 Two or More Present Effects.....	D4-6
Item 1, Person Number and Name of Condition.....	D4-7
Question 2, When Last Saw or Talked to Doctor.....	D4-8
Interviewer Check Item A1.....	D4-11
Question 3a, Name of Condition.....	D4-14
Question 3b, Cause of Condition.....	D4-15
Question 3c, Kind of Trouble.....	D4-16
Question 3d, How Allergy or Stroke Affects Person.....	D4-18
Question 3e, Part of Body Affected.....	D4-19
Interviewer Check Item A2.....	D4-21
Question 4, Restricted Activity, Past Two Weeks.....	D4-24
Question 5, Days Cut Down in Past Two Weeks.....	D4-26
Question 6, Bed Days in Past Two Weeks.....	D4-28
Question 7, Days Lost From Work for Persons 17 Years of Age or Older.....	D4-29
Question 8, Days Lost From School for Persons 6-16 Years.	D4-30
Question 9, Onset of Condition.....	D4-31
Interviewer Check Item A3.....	D4-33
Question 10, Vision Question.....	D4-34
Interviewer Check Item A4.....	D4-35
Item AA, When to Complete Questions 11-19.....	D4-36

	<u>Page</u>
Question 11, Do or Take Anything for Condition.....	D4-37
Question 12, How Long Before Talking to Doctor.....	D4-38
Question 13, Do or Take Anything Before Seeing Doctor....	D4-39
Question 14, Now Take Any Medicine or Treatment.....	D4-40
Question 15, Ever Had Surgery for Condition.....	D4-41
Question 16, Ever Hospitalized for Condition.....	D4-41
Question 17, Number of Doctor Visits During the Past 12 Months.....	D4-42
Question 18, Bed Days During Past 12 Months.....	D4-43
Question 19, Condition Bothers.....	D4-44
Interviewer Check Item A5.....	D4-46
Question 20, When Did the Accident (or Injury) Occur....	D4-47
Question 21, Effects of Accident or Injury.....	D4-48
Question 22, Where Did the Accident Happen.....	D4-51
Question 23, At Work When Accident Happened.....	D4-53
Question 24, Motor Vehicle Involved.....	D4-54
 CHAPTER 5. DOCTOR VISITS PAGES.....	 D5-1
A General Instructions—Two-Week Doctor Visits.....	D5-1
1 When to Fill a Two-Week Doctor Visits Page.....	D5-1
2 Details of Two-Week Doctor Visits.....	D5-1
3 Two or More Doctors Seen on Same Visit.....	D5-1
4 Visit to Doctor and Laboratory on Same Visit.....	D5-1
5 Consistency Check.....	D5-1
6 Mass Visits.....	D5-2
7 Illness Condition First Reported on Two-Week Doctor Visits Page.....	D5-2
Item 1, Person Number.....	D5-3
Question 2, Date of Visit.....	D5-4
Question 3, Place of Visit.....	D5-6
Question 4, Kind of Doctor.....	D5-8
Question 5, Doctor Seen or Talked To.....	D5-9
Question 6, Purpose of Visit.....	D5-10
 CHAPTER 6. HOSPITAL PAGE.....	 D6-1
A General Procedure.....	D6-1
B Use of the Hospital Page.....	D6-1
C Use the Appropriate Word When Asking the Question.....	D6-2
D Check with Question 18 of the Appropriate Condition Page....	D6-2
E Special Note on Frequent Hospitalizations for the Same Person.....	D6-2
Item 1, Person Number.....	D6-3
Question 2, Date Entered Hospital.....	D6-4
Question 3, Name and Address of Hospital.....	D6-6
Question 4, Number of Nights in Hospital.....	D6-7

	<u>Page</u>
Question 5, Nights in Past 12 Months and Two Weeks; in Hospital Last Sunday Night.....	D6-8
Question 6, Condition Causing Hospitalization.....	D6-9
Question 7, Operations Performed.....	D6-11
Interviewer Check Item 8.....	D6-13
 CHAPTER 7. PRESCRIBED MEDICINE.....	 D7-1
A General.....	D7-1
B Prescribed Medicine, Defined.....	D7-1
C Table M.....	D7-1
Questions 1-4, Obtained During Past 2 Weeks.....	D7-2
Table M. Columns (a)-(e).....	D7-3
Columns (f)-(k).....	D7-4
 CHAPTER 8. PREVENTIVE CARE PAGE.....	 D8-1
A General.....	D8-1
Items S1 and S2, What Questions to Ask.....	D8-2
Questions 1-3, How Long Since Electrocardiogram, Glaucoma Test or Chest X-Ray.....	D8-3
Question 4, Eyeglasses or Contact Lenses.....	D8-4
Questions 5 and 6, Pap Smear or Breast Examination.....	D8-5
Question 7, Eyeglasses or Contact Lenses.....	D8-6
Question 8, Routine Physical Examination.....	D8-7
Question 9, First Saw Dentist.....	D8-8
 CHAPTER 9. MEDICAL CARE PAGE.....	 D9-1
A General.....	D9-1
Questions 1-4, Place Saw Doctor.....	D9-2
Questions 5-7, Problems Getting Medical Care.....	D9-4
Question 8, Getting Enough Medical Care.....	D9-6
Questions 9-10, Importance of Factors in Medical Care....	D9-7
Item RS, Respondent.....	D9-9
 CHAPTER 10. PREGNANCY PAGE.....	 D10-1
A Pregnancy, General.....	D10-1
Question 1, Pregnant in Past 12 Months.....	D10-2
Question 2, How Many Times Pregnant.....	D10-3
Table P, Columns (a)-(f).....	D10-4
Columns (g)-(j).....	D10-6

	<u>Page</u>
CHAPTER 11. PERSON PAGES.....	D11-1
A General.....	D11-1
Question 33, Blood Donors.....	D11-2
Question 34, Education.....	D11-3
Question 35, Service in Armed Forces.....	D11-5
Question 36, Work Status in Past Two Weeks.....	D11-7
Question 37, Industry, Occupation, and Class of Worker...	D11-9
Question 38, Family Income.....	D11-25
Questions 39 and 40, Person Income.....	D11-27
Question 41, Marital Status.....	D11-28
Question 42, Times Married.....	D11-28
CHAPTER 12. TABLE X AND ITEM E.....	D12-1
Table X.....	D12-1
Item E.....	D12-2
CHAPTER 13. PROCEDURES FOR EXTRA UNITS AND MERGED UNITS.....	D13-1
A Extra Units.....	D13-1
B Merged Units.....	D13-1
CHAPTER 14. NONINTERVIEW HOUSEHOLDS.....	D14-1
A General.....	D14-1
B Questionnaires for Noninterviews.....	D14-2
C How to Report Type A Noninterviews.....	D14-2
1 Refusal.....	D14-2
2 No One at Home.....	D14-2
3 Temporarily Absent.....	D14-3
4 Other.....	D14-3
D Type B and C Noninterviews.....	D14-4
CHAPTER 15. CONDITION SUPPLEMENTS.....	D15-1
A General.....	D15-1
B Form HIS-1A - Medically Attended Condition Supplement.....	D15-2
C Form HIS-1B - Nonmedically Attended Condition Supplement....	D15-2
D Items a-k.....	D15-2
Identification Items, Items a-h.....	D15-2
Eligible Respondent Available, Item i.....	D15-2
Record of Telephone Calls Only, Item j.....	D15-3
Reason for Noninterview, Item k.....	D15-3
Introduction.....	D15-4
E Questions 1 and 2.....	D15-5
Question 1, Date First Noticed.....	D15-5
Question 2, How Serious.....	D15-5

	<u>Page</u>
F Questions 3-28, Medically Attended Condition Supplement.....	D15-6
Question 3, How Long Before Talking to Doctor, Why Waited	D15-6
Question 4, Received Advice.....	D15-8
Question 5, First Visited Doctor.....	D15-9
Question 6, Where Saw Doctor.....	D15-9
Question 7, Visited Doctor Before.....	D15-10
Question 8, How Choose Doctor.....	D15-10
Question 9, Usual Doctor.....	D15-10
Question 10, Visited Place Before.....	D15-11
Question 11, How Choose Place.....	D15-11
Question 12, Usual Place.....	D15-12
Question 13, Made Appointment.....	D15-12
Question 14, Difficult to Get to Doctor.....	D15-13
Question 15, Waiting Time.....	D15-13
Question 16, Spend Enough Time.....	D15-14
Question 17, Advise to Come Back.....	D15-14
Question 18, Prescribed Medicine.....	D15-15
Question 19, Referred to Another Doctor.....	D15-15
Question 20, Doctor or Place Visited Before.....	D15-16
Question 21, Choose Doctor or Place.....	D15-16
Question 22, Usual Doctor or Place.....	D15-16
Question 23, Difficult to Reach by Telephone.....	D15-17
Question 24, Spend Enough Time.....	D15-17
Question 25, Advise to Come In.....	D15-18
Question 26, Prescribed Medicine.....	D15-18
Question 27, Refer to Another Doctor.....	D15-19
Question 28, Satisfied with Treatment.....	D15-20
G Questions 3-5, Nonmedically Attended Condition Supplement...	D15-21
Question 3, Received Advice.....	D15-21
Question 4, Expect to Talk to Doctor.....	D15-22
Question 5, Why Didn't See a Doctor.....	D15-23
H Still Have Condition, Respondent, and Type of Interview.....	D15-24
Question 29 or Question 6, Still Have Condition.....	D15-24
Item RA or RB, Respondent.....	D15-25
Item I, Type of Interview.....	D15-25
Interviewer Check Item.....	D15-26

PART E

INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES AND ADMINISTRATIVE

CHAPTER 1. INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES.....	E1-1
A How to Begin the Interview.....	E1-1
1 Introduce Yourself to the Respondent.....	E1-1
2 Ask the First Question as Soon as Possible.....	E1-1
3 Explaining the Survey.....	E1-2
B Your Own Manner.....	E1-4
C How to Ask the Questions.....	E1-4
1 Ask the Questions in the Order Specified.....	E1-4
2 Complete the Condition, Doctor Visits, and Hospital Pages	E1-5
3 Information Given Out of Turn or Volunteered.....	E1-5
4 Ask Each Question as Instructed.....	E1-5
5 Avoid Influencing the Respondent.....	E1-6
6 Listen to the Respondent.....	E1-6
7 Repeat the Question.....	E1-7
8 Repeat the Answer.....	E1-7
9 Do Not "Practice Medicine".....	E1-7
10 Pacing the Interview.....	E1-7
11 The Flashcard Booklet.....	E1-8
D Asking Additional Questions (Probing).....	E1-8
1 When to Ask Additional Questions.....	E1-8
2 How to Ask Additional Questions.....	E1-8
E Recording Information Correctly.....	E1-10
F Review of Work.....	E1-10
1 At Close of Interview.....	E1-10
2 Prior to Transmittal.....	E1-11
G "Thank You" Letters.....	E1-12
H Use of Telephone.....	E1-12
CHAPTER 2. ADMINISTRATIVE.....	E2-1
A Transmittal of Materials.....	E2-1
APPENDIX A TO PART E—CONFIDENTIAL NATURE OF INFORMATION COLLECTED IN NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEYS.....	E2-2
APPENDIX B TO PART E—DIAGNOSTIC ERROR CODES.....	E2-3

IS-100
(1973)

PART A

THE HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY AND YOU

CHAPTER 1

DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY

A. Purpose of
the Health
Interview
Survey

1. General

The basic purpose of the Health Interview Survey is to obtain information about the amount and distribution of illness, its effects in terms of disability and chronic impairments, and the kind of health services people receive.

The Health Interview Survey is part of the National Health Survey, which began in May 1957. Prior to that time, the last nationwide survey of health had been conducted in 1935-36. Many developments affecting the national health had taken place in the intervening years:

The Nation went from depression to prosperity and through two wars.

"Wonder drugs" such as penicillin were discovered and put into use.

Public and private health programs were enlarged.

Hospitalization and other health insurance plans broadened their coverage to protect many more people.

Increased research programs were providing information leading to the cure, control or prevention of such major diseases as heart disease, cancer, tuberculosis, muscular dystrophy, and polio through the development of products like the Salk Polio Vaccine.

Despite extensive research on individual diseases in the years 1937-1957, one important element had been missing. We had only piecemeal information from the people themselves on their illness and disability or the medical care they obtained. Many persons although sick or injured, never became a "health statistics," since requirements for reporting illnesses were limited to hospitalized illnesses and certain contagious diseases.

In recognition of the fact that current information on the Nation's health was inadequate, and that national and regional health statistics are essential, the Congress authorized a continuing National Health Survey (Public Law 652 of the 84th Congress). Since May 1957, the United State Public Health Service has regularly collected health statistics under congressional authority.

2. Examples of uses of the data

How is the information obtained from the National Health Survey used? Here are some examples taken from a discussion of the program before the Congress.

a. Helps give direction to health expenditures

Total health expenditures, both public and private, run into many billions of dollars a year. Better statistical information helps to give more effective direction to the expenditure of these large sums.

b. Occurrence and severity of illness and disability

Data on health statistics are valuable tools for the public health officer. The nationwide system of reporting communicable disease has been an important factor in the reduction, and in some instances virtual eradication, of some diseases which were chief causes of illness, disability, and even death several generations ago. Knowledge of the number and location of many diseases made it possible to develop effective programs of immunization, environmental sanitation, and health education which are essential factors in their control.

Today, chronic illness and disability, among both adults and children, constitute our greatest public health challenge. Chronic illness and disability lower the earning power, living standards, and the general well-being of individuals and families. They reduce the Nation's potential output of goods and services and, in advanced stages, burden individuals, families and communities with high cost of care and assistance. The basic public health principle to be applied is the same: Prevention. Better information on occurrence and severity of diseases and disability are needed in order to prevent their occurrence.

c. Control of accidents

Programs for effective control of accidents are still in their infancy. Statistics on the cause and frequency of nonfatal as well as fatal accidents of various types help to shape accident prevention programs and measure their success.

d. Health of the aged

There is nationwide interest in prolonging the effective working life of the aged and aging. Knowledge of the health status of people in their middle and later years is essential to effective community planning for the health, general welfare, and continued activity of older persons.

e. Health education and research

Governmental health programs have their counterparts in many of the national and local voluntary associations and organizations. These associations collect many millions of dollars annually, to promote research and education in such fields as polio-myelitis, cancer, lung disease, heart disease, mental health, crippling conditions, multiple sclerosis, alcoholism, and so on.

Before Congress authorized the continuing National Health Survey, these organizations had to rely on mortality statistics almost exclusively as a source of information about the disease or condition with which they are principally concerned. Current health statistics produced by the National Health Survey aid such groups greatly in planning their activities and expenditures.

- f. Health facilities - hospital care, rehabilitation, insurance, etc.
- The growth of prepayment coverage under voluntary health insurance has increased the demand for the kind of illness statistics which can provide reliable estimates of the number of people who will be ill for a given number of weeks or months. Illness statistics provide an improved measurement of need for hospitals and other health facilities and assist in planning for their more effective distribution. Public school authorities are aided in their planning for the special educational problems of mentally retarded or physically handicapped children. Vocational rehabilitation programs, public officials and industries concerned with manpower problems and industrial safety and health measures, the insurance industry and the pharmaceutical and appliance manufactures are also greatly assisted by reliable statistics on illness and disability.
- g. Factors related to various diseases
- Furthermore, statistical information of this kind is an additional tool for medical research. Study of data showing this relationship between certain economic, geographic or other factors and the various diseases indicate new avenues of exploration and suggest hypotheses for more precise testing.
3. Who uses the data
- The principal users of the data are the United States Public Health Service, State and local health departments, public and private welfare agencies, medical schools, medical research organizations and corporations engaged in the manufacture of drugs and medical supplies. Many other organizations and individuals also use the data.
- B. Sponsorship of the survey
- The National Health Survey is sponsored by the United States Public Health Service, which is a part of the Department of Health, Education and Welfare. Because of the Bureau's broad experience in conducting surveys, we conduct the interviewing for the Public Health Service. The findings of the survey are analyzed and published regularly by the Public Health Service.
- The National Health Survey is not a single survey but a continuing program of surveys which includes the following:
1. The Health Interview Survey (HIS)
- The Health Interview Survey, which is covered in this Manual, is the one which you will be working on most of the time. It is often referred to simply as "HIS" to distinguish it from the other surveys which are described below.

2. The Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (HANES)
The Health and Nutrition Examination Survey which, as the name suggests, collects health information primarily by means of an actual clinical examination. Census interviewing plays an important role in this survey in that it identifies the representative sample of persons who are to be asked to participate in the examinations. The latter are conducted by doctors and dentists from the Public Health Service.
 3. The Hospital Discharge Survey (HDS)
The Hospital Discharge Survey collects information on hospital stays for persons discharged from short stay hospitals, such as date of stay, age, race, sex, marital status, diagnosis, and operations.
 4. The Health Records Survey (HRS)
The Health Records Survey collects information on health and related services by examining the records in places in which people receive medical services, such as hospitals and other places which provide medical, nursing, and personal care.
- C. Design of the HIS sample
- The Health Interview Survey is based on a sample of the entire civilian noninstitutional population of the United States. Over the course of a year, a total of approximately 40,000 households are interviewed. These households are located in the 50 states and the District of Columbia.
1. Selection of sample PSU's
The HIS sample is designed as follows:
 - (a) All the counties in the United States, as reported in the most recent Decennial Census, are examined.
 - (b) Counties which have similar characteristics are grouped together. These characteristics include geographic region, size and rate of growth of population, principal industry, type of agriculture, etc.
 - (c) From each group, one or a set of counties is selected to represent all of the counties in the group. The selected counties (or sets of counties) are called primary sampling units, which we abbreviate to PSU. There are 376 PSU's in the HIS sample.

2. Sample ED's
and segments

Within each PSU:

- (a) A sample of Census Enumeration Districts (ED's) is selected.
- (b) Each selected ED is divided into either small land areas or groups of addresses. These land areas and groups of addresses are called segments.
- (c) Each segment contains addresses which are assigned for interview in one or more samples. There are four types of segments: Area, address, special place, and permit.

3. Sample units

Depending on the type of segment, you will either interview at units already designated on a listing sheet, or you will list the units at a specific address and interview those on designated lines of the listing sheet. In either case it is a sample of addresses, not persons or families.

4. Sample of
newly con-
structed
units

In areas where building permits are issued for new construction (Permit Areas), we select a sample of building permits issued since the last Decennial Census. These addresses are assigned as permit segments.

In places where no building permits are required (Non-Permit Areas), newly constructed units are listed and interviewed in area segments. In Non-Permit Areas, only area segments are assigned.

5. Sample of
special
places

Some sample units are located in places with special living arrangements, such as dormitories, institutions, convents, or mobile home parks. Special place segments are composed of special places which were identified in the 1970 Decennial Census. Units in special places which were not identified as such in the 1970 Census may appear in area and address segments.

6. The quarterly
sample

For purposes of quarterly tabulations of data, separate samples are designated for each quarter of the year. Each quarterly sample is then distributed into 13 weekly samples, of approximately equal size, so that any seasonal factors will not distort the survey results.

The sample designation identifies the calendar year and quarter in which sample units are interviewed. For example, 731 designates the sample beginning in January 1973; 732 designates the sample beginning in April 1973.

HIS-100
(1973)

D. Scope of the
survey

Each year, health information is gathered for every civilian person in 40,000 sample households. Adult residents, found at home at the time of your call, provide the information required.

The questionnaire for the survey provides for certain information to be collected on a continuing basis. In addition to these basic items on the questionnaire, supplemental inquiries are carried from time to time in order to provide information on special topics. Any one supplemental inquiry may be repeated at regular intervals, or may be carried only once.

E. Information
accorded
confidential
treatment

All information which would permit identification of the individual is held strictly confidential, seen only by persons engaged in the National Health Survey (including related studies carried out by the Public Health Service) and not disclosed or released to others for any other purpose.

CHAPTER 2

YOUR JOB PERFORMANCE IN HIS

A. General

As an interviewer for the Health Interview Survey you will be assigned to work in one of the sample areas (PSU's). Your duties will be much the same on each assignment, although you may also perform various functions in different parts of the sample area.

B. Basic field duties

It will be your responsibility to perform field duties of the following types:

1. Listing or updating units at time of interview in address and Take All (TA) places in special place segments.
2. Prelisting or updating area segments and Non Take All (NTA) places in special place segments.
3. Interviewing at units designated for the current sample in various types of segments.

You will interview households mainly by personal interview and occasionally by telephone. Courtesy and discretion at all times are especially important in gaining the confidence and cooperation of the respondents.

C. Additional duties

You will also be expected to:

1. Be available for day and evening work.
2. Read instructional material and complete problem exercises.
3. Complete your assignment within a prescribed period of time.
4. Make weekly transmittals of completed work to your office.
5. Keep an accurate daily record of the work you do, the time you spend, and the miles you travel.
6. Meet the standards of accuracy and efficiency described below.

D. Standards of performance for interviewers

The Health Interview Survey is operated on a fixed budget which means that every phase of the survey must be conducted in the most efficient way. Otherwise, it will be impossible to conduct the survey or to continue the employment of the persons assigned to it.

The success of HIS depends on each interviewer getting and recording accurate and complete information. Otherwise, no amount of review or correction can improve the reliability of the results. Equally important, if you do not complete your assignments efficiently in the prescribed time period, the survey cannot be conducted within its time schedule or its budget.

Standards of performance have been established so that each interviewer will know what is required:

1. Production standards

We have determined the amount of time (based on past experience of HIS interviewers) required to complete each assignment accurately at a reasonable working pace. This standard, which includes time for travel, listing, interviewing, and other required activities, will be compared with the amount of time you actually take for the assignment, to see how efficiently you are performing your work.

Always begin on Monday of "interview" week and complete your interviews as soon as possible during that week. Completion of your assignment within the specified time is not only important from a cost standpoint, but is also essential in order to meet production deadlines.

a. Planning your travel route

The time and mileage spent in traveling from one segment to the next is one of the major costs of the survey. Hold travel to a minimum by carefully planning which segments to visit on a particular day and the order in which to visit them.

b. Reduction of callbacks

Costs and timing are also affected by the number of callbacks (revisits to an address) required. You may find that your rate of production is relatively high during the first few days of interviewing because somebody is at home at most of the addresses you visit. However, production may fall off if you have scattered callbacks. You can minimize this by planning your initial visits at the most productive time, and by tying in callbacks with remaining initial visits to the same part of the sample area.

Where a household is not at home at your first visit, make a careful inquiry of neighbors, janitors, etc., to find out when would be the best time to call back.

c. Efficient
conduct of
interviews

Another time saver is the efficient conduct of interviews. If you are thoroughly familiar with the sequence of items on the HIS-1 questionnaire, and how to fill each one, you can conduct a rapid and efficient interview without sacrificing accuracy. Be prepared to explain the purpose of the survey briefly and clearly, how the information is used, and related subjects. You will be given copies of publications which you can show the respondent to help you in your explanation. You should also save any articles from local newspapers or magazines that report results of Census survey work in association with the National Center for Health Statistics.

2. Quality of
interviewing

No matter how efficiently the survey is conducted, the results may be seriously affected by incomplete, or inaccurately filled, listing and interview forms. In rating interviewers, the quality of their work is given as much weight as their productivity. This manual, and other materials which will be provided, contain all of the instructions needed to list and interview. Learn how to use the manual to look up unfamiliar things. Also, learn how to use the INTERviewer COMMunication to advise your office of special situations or problems.

a. Inter-
viewer's
error rate

Each week, your supervisor will give you a report of errors detected in the course of reviewing your work. The report will specify steps you should take to avoid similar errors in the future. Serious and frequent errors can be eliminated if you are thoroughly familiar with the instructions, and if you ask the questions on the questionnaire in a uniform and consistent fashion.

b. Field
evaluation
of inter-
viewer's
work

Aside from office review, there will be field observation of each interviewer's listing and interviewing work. From time to time you will be observed by your supervisor, as you actually perform these duties. Your office will also reinterview some of your households to be sure that you obtain accurate and complete information.

3. Performance
rating

Each quarter, your supervisor will tell you how your performance in the preceding quarter compared with the production and mileage allowances, and how you may improve your performance. The administrative handbook for interviewers gives standards of performance, and tells how to accurately complete payroll and other administrative forms.

HIS-100
(1973)

PART D

HOW TO INTERVIEW HIS

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

This chapter contains a general description of the questionnaire and the related survey materials, the interviewing sequence, and general instructions for using the questionnaire.

A Description of Materials

1 HIS-1 Questionnaire

- a Purpose - The HIS-1 is the basic document used in the Health Interview Survey. In it you will record pertinent information reported during the interview. The tabulated responses from the questionnaires for all of the sample households become the basis for statistical reports about the health of the Nation.
- b Contents and Layout - The questionnaire contains several types of pages. Each type covers a certain kind of information.
 - 1) Household Page - The Household page is the front cover of the questionnaire. This page contains identification information and questions about the residence of the sample household.
 - 2) Probe Pages
 - a) Pages 2-11 are called "Probe" pages because they contain questions which are designed to "pick up" disability, activity limitations, illness conditions, doctor visits, hospitalizations, etc.
 - b) Pages 2 and 3 of the questionnaire contain probe questions about restricted activity, the conditions causing restriction, and two-week accidents and injuries. Dental visit questions are on pages 4 and 5. Pages 6 and 7 contain questions about doctor visits. Pages 8 and 9 contain questions about activity limitations. Pages 10 and 11 contain questions about hospitalizations, certain selected conditions, and a general health question.
 - 3) Condition Page - There are seven Condition pages. These pages consist of questions designed to gather detailed information about illnesses and injuries reported in response to the probe questions.

- 4) Doctor Visits Page - There is one Doctor Visits page. These questions are asked about visits or calls to a doctor within the past two weeks.
- 5) Hospital Page - There is one Hospital page. These questions are asked about hospitalizations reported during the interview.
- 6) Prescribed Medicine Page - This page consists of questions concerning prescribed medicines obtained during the two-week period prior to the interview.
- 7) Preventive Care Page - This page consists of questions concerning preventive care measures undertaken by persons in four separate age groups.
- 8) Pregnancy Page - These questions obtain information about pregnancies occurring during the 12-month period prior to the interview.
- 9) Person Pages - There are two Person pages containing questions to determine the number of times and the reasons that blood was given during the past 12 months. Questions about education, veteran status, work status, occupation and industry, and income are also asked.
- 10) Format
 - a) The Probe pages (2-11), the Preventive Care page (32 and 33), the Pregnancy page (38 and 39), and the Person pages (40-43) are arranged in a seven-column format. The questions to be asked the respondent appear on the left side of the page; the answers are entered in the six numbered columns which appear to the right of the questions—a separate column for each person. The answers for each person are to be recorded in his column on each of these pages.
 - b) Each Condition page consists of two facing pages containing questions to obtain information about one condition.
 - c) The Two-Week Doctor Visits and Hospital pages are arranged in columnar format. The questions to be asked appear on the left side of the page and the answer space is provided to the right of the questions. There are five columns for two-week doctor visits and four columns for hospitalizations.

A1

2 Flashcard Booklet

The flashcard booklet is made up of a group of cards. Some of the cards are shown to the respondent while others are used only by you, the interviewer. The cards are arranged in the order of use in the interview rather than alphabetically.

- a The inside of the front cover, Card HM, contains a summary table for determining who is to be included as a household member.
- b Card A, the Age Verification Chart, is used to determine the person's age, probe question 3.
- c Cards R-1, R-2, and R-3 are used to select the sample person(s).
- d Card C is a list of illness conditions for which questions 3a-e on the Condition page need not be asked.
- e The card labeled "S (Q. 31)" is a Spanish version of question 31 and is used in Spanish speaking households.

- f Card B is used with the blood donor questions to determine the reasons for giving blood (question 33).
- g Card I is a list of income groups shown to the respondent when asking the income questions (38 and 40).
- h There are yearly calendars for 1972 and 1973, and a card giving the dates of various holidays in 1972 and 1973.
- i The inside of the back cover contains a list of items to be filled for each type of noninterview. On the outside of the back cover is a brief explanation of the survey.

3 Calendar Card

A separate calendar card is furnished with each week's assignment. The card is handed to the respondent and is referred to at different times throughout the interview to remind the respondent of a particular two-week period. Before starting each interviewing assignment, prepare two or three calendar cards by outlining the dates of the two-week reference period in red. The beginning and ending dates should correspond with the two-week dates stamped in questionnaire item C2 by your Data Collection Center.

Use a ruler or straight edge to mark off the two-week period on the calendar card. Use a sharp red pencil or a pen with red ink.

An example of a calendar card showing the two-week reference period for Week 01 of Sample 731 is given below.

Red line (the past two weeks)

Week 01 - 731
(interview week)

		Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
1972 DECEMBER							1	2
		3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		10	11	12	13	14	15	16
		17	18	19	20	21	22	23
		24	25	26	27	28	29	30
		31						
1973 JANUARY			1	2	3	4	5	6
		7	8	9	10	11	12	13
		14	15	16	17	18	19	20
		21	22	23	24	25	26	27
		28	29	30	31			

B Use of Materials and Interviewing Sequence

- 1 The materials needed to conduct an interview are: HIS-1 Questionnaire, HIS-1A and 1B Condition Supplements, HIS-501 Flashcard Booklets, Segment Folder, Calendar Card, and "Thank You" letter.
- 2 The following is a summary of the sequence of using these materials:
 - a Step 1 - After receiving your assignment, check the address of the current sample unit on the listing sheet in the Segment Folder to make sure that this address appears in item 6a of the questionnaire.
 - b Step 2 - When you reach the sample household, verify the address with the respondent, ask "year built" if required, and questions 8 and 9 as applicable. Complete Table X, if required.
 - c Step 3 - Complete probe questions 1-item H. Hand the Calendar Card to the respondent and ask questions 4-32.
 - d Step 4 - Complete a separate Condition page for each condition listed in item C2. Complete the appropriate Condition Supplement as required according to the entries in item A4.
 - e Step 5 - Complete a column of the Doctor Visits page for each doctor visit indicated in item C1.
 - f Step 6 - Complete a column of the Hospital page for each hospitalization indicated in item C1.
 - g Step 7 - Complete the Prescribed Medicine page and Table M as appropriate.
 - h Step 8 - Complete a column of the Preventive Care page for each person.
 - i Step 9 - Complete the questions on the Pregnancy page if the family contains any females aged 17-44.
 - j Step 10 - Complete the Person pages using Card B for the blood donor questions (33) and Card I for questions 38 and 40, Income.

- k Step 12 - Complete the Household page, items 10-22 and review the questionnaire for completeness.
- l Step 13 - Thank the respondent and leave the "Thank You" letter from the Surgeon General. If a telephone callback is required for a Condition Supplement, ask the respondent to have that person refer to the calendar on the back of the letter when answering those questions.

C General Interviewing Instructions

1 Symbols, Type Face, and Use of Pronouns

In order to become familiar with the questionnaire, you must learn the meaning of the different kinds of symbols and type face used on the questionnaire.

a Symbols Used - The following symbols are used throughout the questionnaire:

- 1) Use of Three Dots - Where three dots (...) appear, insert the name of the illness, accident, or injury which you are talking about. This aids the respondent in answering the questions especially when several illnesses have been reported.

4. During the past 2 weeks, did his ... cause him to cut down on the things he usually does?

- 2) Use of Two Dashes - Where two dashes (--) appear, insert the name of the person, relationship, the number, or whatever is appropriate for the question.

23. Was -- at work at his job or business when the accident happened?

- 3) Wording in Parentheses - These are either alternative or additional wordings of a question and are used, as appropriate, for a particular situation.

7a. Does -- have eyeglasses or contact lenses?

b. About how long has it been since -- had his eyes examined to see if he needed (new) glasses?
(Include any eye exams given in school.)

CL

- 4) Words in Brackets - These vertically aligned words or phrases within brackets are alternatives from which one or more is to be selected.

If one or more days in Q's. 4-8, ask 9; otherwise go to next person.

9a. What condition caused -- to

stay in bed
miss work
miss school
cut down

 during the past 2 weeks?

- 5) Skip Instructions - Numbers or letters in parentheses following answers or check boxes indicate the question to go to next. If the question is not applicable, go to the next question, person, or whatever is appropriate. If no skip instruction is given, continue with the next question. (NP) means "next person;" (NC) means "next condition;" (NM) means "next medicine."

20a.	Y	1 N (27)
b.	2 Y (27)	N
c.	2 Y (27)	N (26)

21a.	1 Y	3 N (NP)
b.		(27)

A5 Accident or injury Other (NC)

1 Free from doctor (NM)
 2 Private health insurance
 3 Medicare
 4 Welfare (incl. Medicaid)
 Other - Specify

- b Print Type Used - The questions to be asked of the respondent appear in heavy black type. Instructions to you appear in italics or light face type. Stress words or phrases in capital letters when asking the questions.

<p>31a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) have -</p> <p>If "Yes," ask b and c</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have . . . ?</p>
--

c Use of Pronouns

- 1) When asking the respondent about himself, use the pronouns "you," "your," etc. When asking about other members of the family, substitute appropriate pronouns, such as "he" or "she," or use the name or relationship of the person involved.
- 2) If you are interviewing a one or two person household, substitute "you" or "you and your husband" for the phrase "anyone in the family."
- 3) For children, change the question(s) to "When did anyone last see or talk to a doctor about --'s (your daughter Jane's, your son John's) ...?" or whatever is appropriate.

2 How to Make Entries

- a Written entries are to be made wherever a write-in space is provided for a written entry, for example, the name of a condition.

<p>If "Doctor not talked to," record adequate description of condition. If "Doctor talked to," ask:</p> <p>3a. What did the doctor say it was? - Did he give it a medical name?</p> <p><i>Arthritis</i></p>

C2

- b Wherever a "check box" is provided, an "X" is to be entered, as appropriate.

20a. Did the accident happen during the past 2 years or before that time?	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> During the past 2 years (20b)	<input type="checkbox"/> Before 2 years (21a)
b. When did the accident happen?	
<input type="checkbox"/> Last week	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Over 3-12 months
<input type="checkbox"/> Week before	<input type="checkbox"/> 1-2 years
<input type="checkbox"/> 2 weeks-3 months	

- c Where "Y" or "N" appear, circle the "Y" for "Yes," or the "N" for "No."

24a. Was a car, truck, bus, or other motor vehicle involved in the accident in any way?	1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Y	2 <input type="radio"/> N (NC)
b. Was more than one vehicle involved?	Y	<input checked="" type="radio"/> N
c. Was it (either one) moving at the time?	1 <input type="radio"/> Y	2 <input checked="" type="radio"/> N

- d When reasking a question, "N" must be circled if "Y" is circled.

10a. During the past 2 weeks did anyone in the family, that is you, your --, etc., have any (other) accidents or injuries?	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Y	<input type="radio"/> N (11)
b. Who was this? - Mark "Accident or injury" box in person's column.		
c. What was the injury?		
d. Did anyone have any other accidents or injuries during that period?	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Y (Reask 10b and c)	<input checked="" type="radio"/> N
For each person with "Accident or injury," ask:		
e. As a result of the accident, did -- see a doctor or did he cut down on the things he usually does?		

- e Do not use numerals for "month" entries. Use abbreviations.

Earlier, you told me that -- had seen or talked to a doctor during the past 2 weeks.			OR	<input type="checkbox"/> 7777 Last week
2a. On what (other) dates during that 2-week period did -- visit or talk to a doctor?	2a. Jan. 15	Month	Date	<input type="checkbox"/> 8888 Week before

f Some questions require a written entry for length of time in months or years. Enter whole numbers as reported. Drop fractions.

1) If the answer is "Eighteen months," enter:

27a.	000 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 month
	1 <u>18</u> Mos. 2 ___ Yrs.

2) If the answer is "A year and a half," enter:

27a.	000 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 month
	1 ___ Mos. 2 <u>1</u> Yrs.

g Don't Know - In answering questions, the respondent may indicate that he does not know the answer. In these cases, the entry in the answer space for that question must indicate that the respondent doesn't know the answer. Either write "DK" (don't know) in the answer space or mark the "DK" box if one is provided.

If 17 years old or over, ask:		<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
34a. What is the highest grade or year -- attended in school?		<input type="checkbox"/> None (35)
		Elem: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
		High: 9 10 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 11 12
		College: 1 2 3 4 5 6+
b. Did -- finish the -- grade (year)?		b. 1 Y <u>DK</u> 2 N

TABLE M: Complete columns d-k as app

Line	Ques. No.	Enter name of medicine.	
		(a)	(b)
A	1		
	2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DK	
	3		
	4		

h Interval, Range

1) Boxes are provided for intervals in several places. If the response does not provide enough information to mark the right box, ask additional questions. For example, if the respondent says "six months ago," find out whether it was less than six months or more than six months ago, then mark the appropriate box, that is, "2 wks.-6 mos." or "Over 6-12 mos."

C2

- 2) Sometimes in answer to certain questions requiring a single numerical entry, the respondent may not be able to give an exact number but may answer in terms of a range or interval. In such cases, try as tactfully as possible to obtain a specific number, even if it is an estimate. However, do not force the issue to the point where it harms the interview. If the final answer is an interval or range, for example, "From 10 to 12," then record "10-12" in the answer space.

2. When did -- last see or talk to a doctor about his . . . ?		
1 <input type="checkbox"/> In interview week (Read 2)	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 wks. (item C)	5 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 yrs.
	2 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos.	6 <input type="checkbox"/> 5+ yrs.
	3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos.	7 <input type="checkbox"/> Never
	4 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 yr.	8 <input type="checkbox"/> DK if Dr. seen
		9 <input type="checkbox"/> DK when Dr. seen

5. During that period, how many days did he cut down for as much as a day?	3-4 Days aa <input type="checkbox"/> None (9)
--	--

- i "None" Entries - Mark the "None" box when an answer of "None" is received to one of the questions. If there is no "None" box, enter a dash (—) in the answer space.

13. During the past 2 weeks (the 2 weeks outlined in red on that calendar) how many times did -- see a medical doctor?	12. aa <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None _____ Number of visits } (N)
--	---

Complete Q. 5 from entries in Q.'s 2 and 4; if not clear, ask the questions.	
5a. How many of these -- nights were during the past 12 months?	5a. 4 Nights
b. How many of these -- nights were during the past 2 weeks?	b. — Nights
c. Was -- still in the hospital (nursing home) last Sunday night for this hospitalization (stay)?	c. Y

j Corrections - Make corrections of the entries in the questionnaire as follows:

1) Line out an incorrect written entry and write the correct entry above it.

tonsillitis
~~*Appendicitis*~~

2) If a check box has been marked incorrectly, draw a circle around the incorrect entry, then mark the correct box, or make the correct entry.

22. Where did the accident happen?

1 At home (inside house)

2 At home (adjacent premises)

3 Street and highway (includes roadway and public sidewalk)

4 Farm

5 Industrial place (includes premises)

6 School (includes premises)

7 Place of recreation and sports, except at school

8 Other - Specify →

18. About how many days during the past 12 months has this condition kept him in bed all or most of the day?

2 Days none

3) Line out an incorrect numerical entry and enter the correct number.

~~5~~ 4

4) Line out an incorrectly circled entry and circle the correct answer.

~~(4)~~

(N)

3 More Than One Questionnaire

a The number of questions needed in a household will depend on household composition and on how many conditions, doctor visits, and hospitalizations are reported for that household. Additional questionnaires will be needed for a household if any of the following occurs:

C3

- 1) There are more than seven conditions or five two-week doctor visits or four hospitalizations.
 - 2) There are more than five prescribed medicines or four pregnancies.
 - 3) There are more than six related persons in the household.
 - 4) There are persons not related to the head of the household.
- b If a second questionnaire is required because of 1) or 2) above, the pages of the first questionnaire should be used to record the information as long as there is room. Only when all of the pages of a particular type are filled in the first questionnaire is the second questionnaire needed.
- c A separate questionnaire must be completed for each unrelated household member or family group, including noninterviewed persons.

4 Footnotes and Comments

- a Relevant and precise footnotes or comments are often helpful to the processors in coding various parts of the questionnaire or in solving problems which arise out of inconsistencies or omissions, estimates, etc. When possible, make notes or comments near the answer box containing the entry to which the explanation or comment applies or in the footnote space.
- b When you footnote an explanation or comment, indicate to which entry that explanation or comment applies. Do this by writing the number of the footnote, for example, "1/" both at the source of the footnote and next to the footnote itself.

<p>17a. During the past 12 months, (that is since _____ (date) a year ago), about how many times did -- see -- talk to a medical doctor? (Do not count doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.) (Include the -- visits you already told me about.)</p>	<p>17a. 000 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Only when in hospital 000 <input type="checkbox"/> None _____ Number of visits</p>
<p>b. ABOUT how long has it been since -- LAST saw or talked to a medical doctor?</p> <p><i>1/ only visit while in hospital past 2 wks.</i></p>	<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-week OV 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 weeks not reported (Q's 13 and 16) 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos. 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos. 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 year 6 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 years 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 5+ years 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Never</p> <p>Mark "12 Mo OV" in SP column. <i>1/</i></p>

5 Recording Answers When Received

In the interest of accuracy, record all answers on the questionnaire as they are obtained from the respondent. Notes scribbled on the questionnaire as a reminder to fill certain items with some entry are easily overlooked and oftentimes cannot be read; hence, information recorded in this haphazard manner is frequently lost. Therefore, it is necessary that each answer be fully recorded in the answer space at the time it is reported by the respondent.

HIS-100
(1973)

CHAPTER 2. HOUSEHOLD PAGE

Chapter 2 shows each item on the Household page, how and when to fill it, and the necessary information about it.

Item 1, Book of Books

①

①

1. Book _____ of _____ books

- 1 If you use only one questionnaire for a household, fill this item to read, "Book 1 of 1 books." If you use two questionnaires, fill item 1 on the first questionnaire to read, "Book 1 of 2 books" and the second, "Book 2 of 2 books." Corresponding entries should be made when three or more questionnaires are used. Complete the entries in item 1 after the interview.

Items 2 through 5, Identification

② - ⑤

② - ⑤

2. D.C.C. number	3. Sample	4. Segment type <input type="checkbox"/> Area <input type="checkbox"/> Permit <input type="checkbox"/> Address <input type="checkbox"/> Special place	5. Control number		
			PSU	Segment	Serial

- 1 These items are filled in advance by the office. They identify the sample units.
- 2 Extra Units - Transcribe from the questionnaire for the original sample unit, items 2-5, except for serial number. Leave the space for serial number blank, as this is assigned later by the office.
- 3 Two or More Questionnaires for One Household - For second and additional questionnaires prepared for the household, transcribe items 2-5, including serial number, from the first questionnaire for the household.

Item 6, Address

6a. What is your exact address? (Include House No., Apt. No., or other identification and ZIP code)			Listing Sheet
-----			Sheet No. _____
City	State	ZIP code	Line No. _____
6b. What is your mailing address and ZIP code? <input type="checkbox"/> Same as 6a			

City	State	ZIP code	
6c. Special place name		Sample unit number	Type code

- 1 The office fills item 6a from the listing sheet. If the sheet and line numbers are entered, refer to the appropriate sheet in the segment folder for a more complete description of the unit.
 - a Verify the address before beginning the interview by asking "What is your exact address?"
 - b Make minor corrections and additions, including the ZIP code.
 - c If there is only a description of the unit entered in this item, put the address in item 6b. See instructions for filling item 6b.
 - d For extra units, fill item 6a with a complete enough description so that the extra unit can easily be identified from the original unit.

- 2 After the respondent answers 6a, ask "What is your mailing address and ZIP code?"
 - a If the address in 6a is identical to the mailing address, mark the box "Same as 6a" in 6b. If there are any differences, specify them. ALWAYS include the ZIP code in 6b.

- 3 Item 6c will be filled by the office if the place is in a special place segment or if the place was found in an area segment at time of listing or updating. If you discover an address in an address segment is a special place, fill the space labeled "Special place name."
 - a See Part C, Topic (47) for information on special place procedures.
 - b A complete list and description of the types of special places is given in Part C, Table A.

Item 7, Year Built

⑦

⑦

7. Year built	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Ask	<input type="checkbox"/> Do NOT Ask
When was this structure originally built?		
<input type="checkbox"/> Before 4-1-70 (Continue interview)	<input type="checkbox"/> After 4-1-70 (Go to Q. 9c, complete if required and end interview)	

- 1 The HIS sample is kept up to date by adding a sample of building permits issued since April 1, 1970. The selected permit addresses are included in the survey as permit segment addresses. In area segments that are located in permit-issuing areas, each newly constructed unit must be reported as a Type C noninterview. Otherwise, it could have a chance to come into sample more than once. See Part C, Topic ⑥⁴ for more information about year built.
- 2 If year built determination is required, the office will have marked the Ask box in the heading of item 7; otherwise, the Do NOT Ask box will be marked.
 - a Ask item 7 for both vacant and occupied units. If the unit is vacant or is a noninterview, try to get the information from a knowledgeable person, such as an apartment manager or long-term resident of the neighborhood.
 - b All sample units in a multi-unit structure are considered built at the same time.
- 3 If the structure containing the sample unit was built before 4-1-70:
 - a Mark the appropriate box.
 - b Continue the interview.
- 4 If the structure containing the sample unit was built after 4-1-70:
 - a Mark the appropriate box.
 - b Ask item 9c, if required.
 - c End the interview.
 - d Mark the Type C noninterview reason, "Built after April 1, 1970."

⑦ Year Built (Continued)

⑦

5 Extra Units

- a Determine year built for extra units in area segments in permit areas. If the extra unit is in the same structure as the original sample unit, the year built is the same for both units.
- b Do not determine year built for extra units in address segments, permit segments, special place segments, or area segments in nonpermit areas.

6 Exceptions - See Section F in Topic ⑥4 in Part C.

HIS-100
(1973)

8

Item 8, Type of Living Quarters

8

8. Type of living quarters _____ 1 Housing unit 2 OTHER unit

- 1 Mark the box for Housing unit or OTHER unit according to the definitions given in Part C, Topics (25) and (39).
- 2 Mark item 8 for Type A and Type B noninterviews as well as for interviewed units. Leave item 8 blank for Type C noninterviews.

Question 9, Coverage

9. Area segments ONLY		
<input type="checkbox"/> a. Are there any occupied or vacant living quarters besides your own in this building?	Y (fill Table X)	N
<input type="checkbox"/> b. Are there any occupied or vacant living quarters besides your own on this floor?	Y (fill Table X)	N
<input type="checkbox"/> c. Is there any other building on this property for people to live in - either occupied or vacant?	Y (fill Table X)	N
<input type="checkbox"/> d. None		
GO TO PROBE PAGE 2		

- 1 Questions 9a-c are coverage questions which are asked only in area segments. They are intended to discover extra units. For further information about coverage questions, see Part C, Topic (17).
- 2 Your office will indicate which of questions 9a-c you are to ask in area segments by marking the appropriate box(es) in question 9. Do not ask those questions for which the box is left blank.
- 3 Your office will mark the None box in question 9d, if you are to omit question 9 entirely. In this case, leave question 9 blank and go directly to question 1 on Probe page 2.
- 4 If you find that a sample unit is a Type A or B noninterview, ask 9a, b, or c of a janitor, apartment manager, neighbor, etc. If you find that a sample unit is a Type C noninterview, ask question 9c, (if it is marked) of a knowledgeable person in the area. Modify the question to refer to the noninterview unit. For example, in asking 9a of a neighbor, you should say, "Are there living quarters for more than one group of people in that vacant house next door?"
- 5 If the answer to question 9a, 9b, or 9c is "No," go to question 1 on Probe page 2.
- 6 If the answer to question 9a, 9b, or 9c is "Yes," fill Table X on the back of the questionnaire. See Part D, Chapter 11, and Part C, Topic (54) for procedure to follow.

NOTE: If a unit was merged with a sample unit and later became unmerged, consider it as unlisted and treat it as an extra to the sample unit.

- 7 Extra Units - Coverage questions are not asked for extra units, so for these units make no entries in question 9.
- 8 Go to question 1 on page 2 after completing question 8, and question 9 if required. The instruction under question 9 is a reminder to you that the remaining questions on the Household page are completed after the interview.

Item 10, Questions 11 and 12, Tenure and Land Use

10. Land use	2 <input type="checkbox"/> RURAL — Regular units and Special Place units coded 85-88 in 6c. go to Q. 11. — Special Place units not coded 85-88 in 6c. go to Q. 13.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> URBAN (13)	
11. Do you own or rent this place?	<input type="checkbox"/> Owned	<input type="checkbox"/> Rented	<input type="checkbox"/> Rented for free
12a. You told me your living quarters are (owned/rented/rented for free). Does the place you (own/rent/rent for free) have 10 acres or more?	1 Y (b)	2 N (c)	
b. During the past 12 months did sales of crops, livestock, and other farm products from this place amount to \$50 or more?	2 Y (13)	4 N (13)	
c. During the past 12 months did sales of crops, livestock, and other farm products from this place amount to \$250 or more?	3 Y	5 N	

- 1 Item 10 is marked by the office. For extra units, mark the same box in item 10 that is marked for the original unit.
 - a If the office has marked RURAL and the sample unit is either a regular unit or a special place unit coded 85-88 in item 6c, go to question 11.
 - b If the office has marked RURAL and the sample unit is a special place unit not coded 85-88 in 6c, skip questions 11 and 12, and go to question 13. The office will automatically circle "N" in question 12c for these cases.
 - c If the office has marked URBAN, skip questions 11 and 12, and go to question 13.

- 2 Question 11, (Tenure) Owned, Rented, or Rented for Free
 - a Owned - Mark "Owned" if the owner or co-owner is living at the sample unit, even though he is not the head of the household or he is absent, such as a family member in the Armed Forces or temporarily working away from home.
 - 1) Mark the "Owned" box even if the place is mortgaged or not fully paid for.
 - 2) A cooperative apartment is owned only if the owner lives in it.
 - 3) In the case of a trailer which is owned by the occupant but which is parked on rented ground, the land is considered to be the unit for the land usage question. Mark the box for "Rented" in such a case.

- b Rented - Mark "Rented" if any money rent is paid or contracted for. The rent may be paid by persons not living in the unit, for example, a welfare agency.
- c Rented for Free - Mark "Rented for free" for places occupied rent free by persons in exchange for services rendered, such as caretaker, a farm worker, or janitor who receives the use of a house or apartment as part of his wages. A tenant farmer who does not pay money rent should be reported as occupying the unit "Rented for free."

3 Question 12, Sale of Farm Products from This Place

- a Question 12a - Ask question 12a by first reading the lead-in phrase, "You told me your living quarters are...." Then select the phrase in parenthesis that matches the box marked in question 11. This will provide the respondent with a reference to tenure so he can correctly answer your base question, "Does the place you (own/rent/rent for free) have 10 acres or more?"

- 1) The question "Does the place you (own/rent/rent for free) have 10 acres or more?" refers to the amount of land included in the PLACE which contains the sample unit.

In some cases the PLACE may be one sample unit consisting of a house and lot. In other cases it may consist of a whole tract of land or a combination of two or three pieces of land on which the sample unit is located.

If there is any question, consider as PLACE one or more tracts of land which the respondent considers to be the same property, farm (or ranch), or estate. These tracts may be adjoining or they may be separated by a road or creek or other pieces of land.

- Explain the meaning of PLACE to the respondent if there seems to be some question.

- 2) More Than One Unit on Same Place - If there is more than one sample unit on the same place (as defined above), the answer for each unit must be the same. For example, an owner lives in one sample unit on a place of 150 acres; his hired hand lives rent free in a separate sample unit on the same place. The answer to question 12a would be "Y" (Yes) for each unit. Remember again, however, that if there is a cash renter on this property, we are referring only to the land which he rents.

- 3) If Place is Definitely in Built-Up Area - There may be certain areas coded RURAL which have been built up into apartment areas, suburban housing developments, and the like. In such cases where the place is obviously a private home on a lot or an apartment, circle "N" without asking these questions.

If the sample unit is in a rural (not built-up) area, ask the question, even if the unit appears to be just a house and lot.

- b Question 12b, Sale of Produce (\$50 or More) - If the answer to question 12a is "Yes," ask question 12b and circle "Y" or "N" as appropriate. Then continue with question 13. It is not necessary to find out the precise amount, so long as the answer can be classified as \$50 or more "Y" or less than \$50 "N". Note that the question refers to gross sales during the past 12 months. If questions arise on the meaning of sales from this place, use the following as a guide:

- 1) Sales from This Place - By sales of crops, livestock and other farm products is meant the gross amount received for the sale of crops, vegetables, fruits, nuts, livestock and livestock products (milk, wool, etc.), poultry and eggs, nursery and forest products produced on this place.
- 2) Place - The place is the same as that referred to in question 12a.
- 3) More Than One Unit - If there is more than one sample unit on a place (remembering how place is defined differently for owners and renters), the answer for each unit must be the same. For instance, the owner lives in one unit on a place of 15 acres. His total sales amounted to \$780. His hired hand lives rent free in a separate unit on the place. Each of the two units would have "Y" in question 12a and "Y" in question 12b.
- 4) Special Situation - If the respondent has recently moved to the place and he has not sold any farm products, explain that this question refers to sales made from the place during the past 12 months, either by him or by someone else. If he is unable or unwilling to make an estimate, enter "DK" (don't know).

- c Question 12c, Sale of Produce (\$250 or More) - If the answer to question 12a is "N," ask question 12c and circle "Y" or "N" as indicated. Then continue with question 13.
- 1) In completing question 12c, follow the same instructions as were given for question 12b for sales, definition of place, more than one unit and the special situation. The only difference is that question 12c refers to sales of \$250 or more. The higher amount of sales from a place of less than 10 acres is required for it to be classified as a farm.
 - 2) If the place is obviously a private home on a lot or an apartment, circle "N" in question 12c without asking the question.

Question 13, Number of Rooms

13. How many rooms are in this -- (Unit)? Count the kitchen but not the bathroom.	Total rooms
--	-------------

- 1 Use an applicable term, such as trailer, house, etc., when asking the question. If no appropriate term, use "unit." If there are several housing units in a structure, make sure that the rooms you are counting are only for the housing unit you are interviewing.
- 2 Count only whole rooms, such as living rooms, dining rooms, kitchens, finished basement or attic rooms, recreation rooms, permanently enclosed sunporches, bedrooms, or other rooms suitable or used for living purposes.

Count as a separate room a dinette, kitchenette, or "half-room" which is partitioned off from floor to ceiling; but count as only one room a kitchenette and dinette separated only by shelves or cabinets. Rooms equipped with movable partitions from floor to ceiling are separate rooms.
- 3 Do not count bathrooms, strip or pullman kitchens, halls or foyers, alcoves, pantries, laundries, closets or storage space, unused basement or attic rooms not suitable for living quarters, or porches, unless they have been permanently enclosed and are suitable for year-round use.

Question 14, Number of Bedrooms

14

14

14. How many bedrooms are in this -- (Unit)? If "None" describe in footnotes.	Number of bedrooms
--	--------------------

- 1 Enter in question 14 the number of rooms in the unit which are mainly used as bedrooms. A bedroom is a room intended primarily to be slept in.

In some houses, the upper floor can be made into one or more bedrooms; consider such quarters as bedrooms only if they are finished off. Do not count as a bedroom a combination bedroom-living room or a den which is intended primarily for purposes other than sleeping.

- 2 For purposes of filling questions 13 and 14, one room housing units are always considered as having one room (question 13) and no bedrooms (question 14). In this case enter a dash in question 14. Describe the situation in the footnote space, for example, "one room apartment."

15

Question 15, Telephone Number

15

15. What is the telephone number here?	Area code	Number
2 <input type="checkbox"/> None		

- 1 Ask question 15 and enter the telephone number including the area code in the space provided. If the household has a telephone but the number is not obtained, enter the reason. Mark the "None" box only in those cases where there is no telephone in the household.
 - a If questions are raised, say the number will save the expense and time of a personal callback in case you have overlooked some needed information.

Items 16 and 17

16

17

Interview Observed, Interviewer's Name and Code

16

17

16. Was this interview observed?

1 Y

2 N

17. Interviewer's name

Code

- 1 Item 16, Observed Households - Fill item 16 for interviewed households to indicate whether the interview was or was not observed.
- 2 Item 17, Name and Code of Interviewer - Sign your name in the space provided on all questionnaires after you have completed the entire interview for a household or are turning in the questionnaire as a final noninterview. Also, enter the code which has been assigned to you by your office.

Item 18, Noninterviews

18. Noninterview reason

TYPE A

1 Refusal - Describe in a footnote
2 No one at home - repeated calls
3 Temporarily absent
4 Other - Specify _____

TYPE B

1 Vacant - nonseasonal
2 Vacant - seasonal
3 Usual residence elsewhere
4 Armed forces
5 Other - Specify _____

TYPE C

1 Unused line of listing sheet
2 Demolished
3 Merged
4 Outside segment
5 Built after April 1, 1970
6 Other - Specify _____

- 1 Item 18 is used to report any instance in which you are unable to obtain an interview at a unit or for part of a household. In each such case you must mark the appropriate noninterview reason.
- 2 Noninterviews are classified into three general groups. See Part D, Chapter 14 for an explanation of Type A reasons; and Part C, Topic 35 for an explanation of Type B and C reasons.
- 3 If an interview has been obtained for one or more members of a household but not for all eligible members, it is considered only a partial interview. Enter the person numbers of the noninterviewed persons in the footnote space on the front of the questionnaire and give the noninterview reason, in full, for each such person or group.

Item 19, Record of Calls

19. Record of calls					
Date	Beginning time		Ending time		Comp.
	a.m.	p.m.	a.m.	p.m.	
1					
2					
3					
4					
5					
6					

- 1 This is a record of all visits made to a household to complete the initial interview and should include all visits made regardless of whether or not you found anyone home. An "initial interview" is one in which the questions on the basic questionnaire have been completed. This does not include questions on the Condition Supplements, which may require additional calls. Count as "visits," only actual attempts to contact the household, such as ringing the doorbell or knocking on a door. Do not include telephone calls for appointments.

- 2 Calls for Entire Household and for a Person or Family Group Not Related to Head
 - a Enter the date and time of each visit on the line for the particular visit you are making. That is, enter the date and time of the first call on the first line, for the second call on the second line, etc.

 - b For the date, enter an abbreviation for the month and numerals for the day. For the time indicate a.m. or p.m. by deleting the one that is not applicable. For example, Jan. 19, 9:20 a.m. or Jan. 20, 7:30 p.m., etc. Do not use numerals for the month. The beginning time represents the time you knock on the door.

 - c After you have completed an initial interview, enter the ending time in the space provided. The interval between the beginning and ending times gives the actual time in the household, including any in-household waiting time and time spent completing the Condition Supplements during the initial interview. Enter an "X" in the "Comp." (completed) column, indicating that the interview was completed. This should be done before you leave the household. Do not "round" the beginning and ending times to the nearest five minutes but use exact times (to the minute).

Record of Calls (Continued)

- 1) A completed interview is one in which you have asked all questions on health and personal characteristics for all members of a household. If a respondent has refused to answer a few of the questions, such as that on income, but has provided the rest of the information, the interview is considered completed.
 - d Complete item 19 for each separate family unit. Enter the date and time of each call made and the beginning and ending time of interview for the unrelated person(s) on a separate questionnaire. Enter this information on the separate questionnaire even though you may not have to return to the household at a different time to interview these persons. If you are unable to interview an unrelated person, enter the reason for noninterview on the separate questionnaire.
 - e If an interview is obtained for a family unit, but not for an unrelated person, mark the completed column on the family's questionnaire. Leave this column blank on the questionnaire prepared for the unrelated person.
 - f For unrelated household members, mark "X" in item 19, to indicate a completed interview, on each questionnaire that was completed for each unrelated person or group that was interviewed.
- 3 For noninterviewed households, enter only the dates and times when calls were made. Leave the "Ending time" blank.

- 4 Illustration of How to Fill Item 19 - On this page and the following page are illustrations of how to fill item 19. In example 1, no one was at home on the first trip to the household. The housewife and 20-year-old son were interviewed for themselves and for other related household members on the second trip. A roomer could not be interviewed until the fourth trip.

Example 1

These entries were recorded on the first questionnaire for the related household members.

19. Record of calls			
Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Comp.
1	Feb 16 11:30		
2	Feb 17 7:45	8:30	X
3			
4			
5			
6			

These dates and times were recorded on the second questionnaire that was filled for the roomer.

19. Record of calls			
Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Comp.
1	Feb 17 8:30		
2	Feb 18 7:45		
3	Feb 19 8:10	8:30	X
4			
5			
6			

Record of Calls (Continued)

In example 2, three unrelated persons share an apartment. Column (1) was interviewed on the first visit. Column (2) was out of town for three weeks and column (3) could not be interviewed until the next evening. These entries were recorded on three separate questionnaires.

Example 2

Column (1)

19. Record of calls			
Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Comp.
1 Jan 22	6:30 p.m.	1:55 p.m.	X
2	p.m.	p.m.	
3	p.m.	p.m.	
4	p.m.	p.m.	
5	p.m.	p.m.	
6	p.m.	p.m.	

Column (2)

19. Record of calls			
Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Comp.
1 Jan 22	6:55 p.m.	p.m.	
2 Jan 23	7:15 p.m.	7:28 p.m.	X
3	p.m.	p.m.	
4	p.m.	p.m.	
5	p.m.	p.m.	
6	p.m.	p.m.	

Column (3)

18. Noninterview reason			
TYPE A			
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Refusal - Describe in a footnote			
2 <input type="checkbox"/> No one at home - repeated calls			
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Temporarily absent			
4 <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify <u>out of town for 3 weeks due to fire</u>			
TYPE B			
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Vacant - nonseasonal			
2 <input type="checkbox"/> Vacant - seasonal			
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Usual residence elsewhere			
4 <input type="checkbox"/> Armed forces			
5 <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify _____			
TYPE C			
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Unused line of listing sheet			
2 <input type="checkbox"/> Demolished			
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Merged			
4 <input type="checkbox"/> Outside segment			
5 <input type="checkbox"/> Built after April 1, 1970			
6 <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify _____			

19. Record of calls			
Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Comp.
1 Jan 22	6:55 p.m.	p.m.	
2	p.m.	p.m.	
3	p.m.	p.m.	
4	p.m.	p.m.	
5	p.m.	p.m.	
6	p.m.	p.m.	

Item 20, Record of Callbacks Required

<p>20a. List column numbers of family members requiring telephone or personal callbacks for Condition Supplements.</p> <p>_____ <input type="checkbox"/> NONE</p>
<p>b. List column numbers of sample persons not interviewed during initial interview.</p> <p>_____ <input type="checkbox"/> NONE</p>

- 1 Item 20a is used as a check item to enable you to know which person(s) require a telephone or personal callback. You will delete item 20b when you receive your assignment.
 - a Item 20a - The person requiring a Condition Supplement must respond to the supplement for himself if he is 19 years of age or over. If this person is not at home or is otherwise not available for interview, enter his column number in item 20a.
 - 1) If all required Condition Supplements are completed during the initial interview, mark the "None" box. Thus, item 20a will always have an entry.
 - 2) A proxy respondent is acceptable on the Condition Supplements for any persons who are physically or mentally incompetent, persons away from home during the interview period, and for persons under 19.
 - 3) If the only missing information for the entire family is one or more Condition Supplements for a nonsample person, you should obtain this by telephone from this person.
 - 4) Any Condition Supplements for a sample person requires a personal callback.
 - b Before leaving the household, check to see that there is an entry in item 20a.

If return calls are required, determine the best time for these calls and enter this in the footnote space on the Household page.

21. Record of additional personal calls				
Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Col. Nos. completed	
1	a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.		
2	a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.		
3	a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.		
4	a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.		
NOTE: Footnote reason for non-interviews for sample persons in same detail as in item 18.				
22a. Number of telephone calls			22b. Total telephone interview time	

- 1 Item 21 is only used to record information concerning additional personal callbacks for sample persons.
 - a Enter the dates and times of personal callbacks for sample persons in the spaces provided in item 21 in the same manner as in item 19, Record of Calls. If a Condition Supplement for a nonsample person is completed at the same time, include the time for the supplement in the total time for this call. Also enter the column numbers of the persons interviewed in the "Col. Nos. completed" columns.
 - b Delete the "NOTE" under item 21 when you receive your assignment.

- 2 Item 22 is used to record information concerning telephone callbacks for Condition Supplements for nonsample persons.
 - a Look at the "Record of Telephone Calls Only" on the Condition Supplement(s) and enter in item 22a the total number of telephone calls required to complete the Condition Supplements for this household.
 - b Again look at the "Record of Telephone Calls Only" on the Condition Supplement(s) and enter in item 22b the total telephone time required to complete the Condition Supplements.
 - c Include in item 22 all telephone calls, regardless of whether the supplement was completed or not.

CHAPTER 3. PROBE PAGES

Chapter 3 shows each question on the Probe Pages 2-11, how to fill it, and the necessary information about it.

A Eligible Respondent for Questions 1 and 2

Questions 1 and 2 (name and relationship of all household members) may be asked of any "responsible" adult member of the household whether or not he is related to the head of the household. "Responsible" means not mentally incompetent or not too ill to be able to think clearly about the questions being asked. "Adult" means a person 19 years old or older or any person who has been married. "Related" means related by blood, marriage, or adoption.

B Eligible Respondent for Remaining Part of Questionnaire and Supplements

The "eligible" respondent may answer the remaining questions on the basic questionnaire for all related persons, both adults and children under 19 years of age. This same respondent may answer the questions on the Condition Supplements, if the related person is under 19 years of age, mentally or physically incompetent, or away from home during the interview period. However, the person requiring the Condition Supplements must answer these questions for himself, if he is 19 years of age or older.

1 17 or 18 Year Olds - Single persons 17 or 18 years old may not respond for other family members but may respond for themselves in certain cases. The reason for this restriction is that, while 17 and 18 year-old persons should know about themselves, they are unlikely to have sufficient knowledge about the rest of the family to be able to furnish accurate information. Accept 17 or 18-year-old persons as self-respondents under the following circumstances:

- a If there is no related person in the household who is 19 years old or over, for example, if the household consists of two unrelated 17 or 18-year-old boys living in a school dormitory room each may respond for himself.
- b If they are present during the interview with an older respondent, 17 or 18-year-old persons may respond entirely or partly for themselves.

C Children

Information about a child is normally obtained from one of the parents or other related adults in the household. If an unrelated person is usually responsible for the child's care, that person may report for the child. Thus, if the respondent has a foster child or ward living in his home, he should answer the questions about the child. Do not enter these children on a separate questionnaire, but treat them as related household members.

D Adults Not Related

Adults not related to the head of the household (partners, roomers, or servants) are to answer all questions, after question 2, for themselves. If, however, such persons have related family members in the household, any responsible adult member of that family may answer the questions for that family group. If no eligible respondent for the unrelated persons is at home at the time of the original interview, a return call must be made to interview them.

E Exception to Eligible Respondent Rule

- 1 You may interview someone who is responsible for the care of a person who is not competent to answer the questions for himself provided there are no related members of the household who can answer for that person. The person who provides the care may or may not be a member of the household. For this type of case, explain the circumstances, for example, person is mentally incompetent and unable to respond for self, respondent takes care of her during the day.
- 2 A member of the Armed Forces who lives at home with his family may be interviewed for his family, but no health information is obtained for him.

F Return Call May Be Necessary

In some instances, it may be necessary to make return visits to the household in order to interview an "eligible respondent" as defined in paragraph B above. For example, if a respondent who is otherwise acceptable does not appear to be "responsible" because of extreme age, illness, etc., stop the interview and arrange to make a return call to interview another respondent. Also, if an otherwise eligible respondent can answer questions for himself, but does not know enough about other related adults in the household, finish the interview for him but arrange to call back for the other household members.

①

Question 1, Household Membership

①

<p>1a. What is the name of the head of this household? - Enter name in first column.</p> <p>b. What are the names of all other persons who live here? - List all persons who live here.</p> <p>c. I have listed (Read names.) Is there anyone else staying here now, such as friends, relatives, or roomers? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes* <input type="checkbox"/> No</p> <p>d. Have I missed anyone who USUALLY lives here but is now away from home? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No</p> <p>e. Do any of the people in this household have a home anywhere else? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No</p> <p>If any adult males listed, ask: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <small>*Apply household membership rules.</small></p> <p>f. Are any of the persons in this household now on full-time active duty with the Armed Forces of the United States? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <small>Col(s). _____ (Delete)</small></p>	<p>1a. First name ①</p> <hr style="border-top: 1px dashed black;"/> <p>Last name</p>
--	---

1 Question 1a - Ask question 1a on page 2 and record the name in column 1.

Enter the first name in the space provided at the top and enter the last name in the space below that. Apply the following definitions:

- a Household - The entire group of persons who live in one housing unit or one OTHER unit. It may be several persons living together or one person living alone. It includes the household head and any relatives living in the unit. The household may also include roomers, servants, or other persons not related to the head.
- b Head of Household - The person who is regarded as the head by the members of the household. It may be the chief breadwinner of the family, the parent of the chief earner, the only adult member of the household, or a member of the Armed Forces living at home about whom we want no health information. In husband-wife households, list the husband first, even if the wife is considered the head.

2 Question 1b - Continue with question 1b and record the names in the appropriate columns. All members of the household, regardless of whether they are related to the head, are to be listed on one questionnaire (or one set of questionnaires if there are more than six persons in a household).

- a If there are 7-12 members in a household, use a second questionnaire and change the column numbers to "7," "8," etc., as shown below. If there are more than 12 members in the household, use additional questionnaires in a similar manner. Enter the last name of the person you list in the first column on second and successive questionnaires even when it is the same as the name listed on the first questionnaire.

①

Household Membership (Continued)

①

1c.	First name	① 7
	James	
	Last name	Jones

	First name	② 8
	Kate	
	Last name	—

- b If the persons reported in response to item 1, represent a "typical family group," such as husband, wife, and unmarried children, a parent and child, two or more unmarried sisters, or some similar clear-cut arrangement, consider all the members as a single household.

If, in answer to items 1b-1e the respondent reports a married son and his family or relatives, such as a mother, uncle, or cousin, ask if they all live and eat together as one family.

If they all live and eat together, treat them as a single household and interview the entire group on one questionnaire.

If any of the persons reported in answer to questions 1 and 2 say they live separately from the others, ask about the access to the quarters they occupy and their kitchen facilities. If the quarters have either direct access or complete kitchen facilities, consider them as separate living quarters. If these separate living quarters have not already been listed, apply the rules for extra units, according to the instructions given in Part D, Chapter 13.

- c Prescribed Order of Listing Household - List them in the following order:

- 1) Head of household.
- 2) Wife of the head.
- 3) Unmarried children of the head, or of the wife, in order of their ages, beginning with the oldest.
- 4) Married sons and daughters (in order of age) and their families listed in this order: Husband, wife, children.
- 5) Other persons related to the head.
- 6) Roomers and other persons not related to the head.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

- 7) If, among the persons not related to the head, there are married couples or persons otherwise related among themselves, list them in the order indicated for the families of married children (group 4).
- d How to Enter Names - Enter the names as you did for the head of the household. If there are two persons in the household with the same first and last names, they must be further identified by a middle initial or name or as Sr., Jr., etc. Do not assume members of the household have the same last name. However, for each member of the household with the same last name as the person in the preceding column, enter a long dash instead of repeating the last name.

①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥
John, Jr.	Betty	Olive	Samuel	John, Sr.	Thomas
Doe	—	Poe	—	Doe	Roe
Head	Wife	Daughter	Grandson	Father	Roomer

- 3 Questions 1c-1e - Questions 1c and 1d serve as reminders about persons who may be overlooked by the respondent. List each person named by the respondent in answer to these questions providing he is a household member. Question 1e serves to delete possible nonhousehold members from the list. There is an asterisk above the "Yes" box for questions 1c-1e. The asterisk refers to the instruction, "Apply household membership rules."
- a Household Membership - Generally, two categories of persons in a household are considered as members of the household.
- 1) Persons, whether present or temporarily absent, whose usual place of residence at the time of the interview is the household. Usual place of residence is the place where the person usually sleeps.
 - 2) Persons staying in the household who have no usual place of residence elsewhere.

①

Household Membership (Continued)

①

Further details are given in Sections 6-10 of this topic.

- b Always ask any additional questions needed in order to properly determine who are household members. Examples of such questions are as follows:
- 1) How many days a week does your husband spend in the city where he works?
 - 2) Does your daughter live in the town where she goes to college or does she sleep here and go back and forth to classes?
 - 3) Do your family and your son's family all live and eat together?
 - 4) Does your cousin have direct access to her room?

If you are in doubt whether to include a person as a member of the household, consider him a member of the household and explain the circumstances in an INTER-COMM.

- 4 Question 1f - The question is asked at this point to avoid asking unnecessary questions about active members of the Armed Forces who are not included in this survey. Ask question 1f if any of the males in the household could be an adult. For the purpose of question 1f, "adult" means any person who is 17 years old or over.
- a Although exact ages have not been determined at this point in the interview, it should be possible, in most cases, to have a general idea of the age of household members. For example, the apparent age of a female respondent who is head of the household should indicate whether her son living at home could be 17 years old or over. When in doubt, always ask question 1f.
- b If the answer to question 1f is "Yes," enter the person number(s) on the line provided.
- c Although question 1f is primarily for males, if in asking the question it is discovered that a listed female household member is in the Armed Forces, enter her person number in question 1f.
- d Armed Forces - "Active duty in the Armed Forces" means full-time active duty in the U.S. Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine Corps, or Coast Guard, and any National Guard unit presently activated as part of the regular Armed Forces. Included in "active duty" is the six-month period a young man may serve in connection with the provisions of the Reserve Forces Act of 1955.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

- e. Do not count as members of the Armed Forces, persons working in civilian positions for the Armed Forces, persons serving in the Merchant Marine, persons in a National Guard unit not activated as part of the regular Armed Forces or civilians who train only part time as reservists.
- f. Armed Forces Reserve - Persons who are in any reserve component of the Armed Forces but who only attend weekly reserve meetings, summer camp or the like are to be counted as members of the household.

5 Delete the Name if Not Household Member

- a. If a person whose name has been listed on the questionnaire is considered to have a usual place of residence elsewhere, is living in a separate unit or is not a household member for any other reason (following the rules in Section 8 of this topic), delete as follows:
 - 1) "X" out the column for that person from question 1 to item C.
 - 2) For Armed Forces members, determine and indicate either "Living at home" or "Not living at home."
 - 3) For persons other than Armed Forces members, explain the reason for the deletion.
- b. In deleting a person column, do not change the person numbers of other members of the household. See illustration.

1a. What is the... b. What are... c. I have... d. Have I... e. Do any... f. Are or... g. (Delete) <input type="checkbox"/> No	1a. First name (1)	AGE	First name (2)	AGE	1a. First name (3)	AGE
	John	1 W	Karen	1 W	Lachy	1 W
	Jones	2 N	-	2 N	-	2 N
	SEX 1 M	Relationship 1 M	SEX 2 F	Relationship 2 F	SEX 1 M	Relationship 1 M
2. How	2. Relationship	3. Who	2. Relationship	3. Who	2. Relationship	3. Who
	HEAD living at home		wife		live with at school	
C	DOCTOR	HOSP.	DOCTOR	HOSP.	DOCTOR	HOSP.
	(NP)	(NP)	(NP)	(NP)	(NP)	(NP)
	Q. No.	Condition	Q. No.	Condition	Q. No.	Condition

6. Usual Place of Residence Defined

In most cases, usual place of residence means the place the person would name in reply to the question, "Where do you live?" More specifically, it is the place where the person usually sleeps. A usual place of residence must be specific living quarters held for the person to which he is free to return at any time. A mailing address alone does not constitute a usual place of residence.

Living quarters which a person rents to or lends to someone else cannot be considered his usual place of residence during the time it is occupied by someone else. Likewise, vacant living quarters (sometimes furnished) which a person offers for rent or sale during his absence should not be considered his usual place of residence while he is away. If the living quarters are furnished, be sure the household is not just temporarily absent—see below.

Persons with no usual place of residence elsewhere include recent migrants, persons trying to find permanent living quarters and other persons who are staying temporarily in the unit and do not have a home of their own.

7 Household Members

Count the following persons as household members of the sample unit:

- a Persons who consider the sample unit as their home and who are:
 - 1) Living at home at the time of the interview; or
 - 2) temporarily absent at the time of the interview, on vacation, visiting or on business. This includes bus drivers, railroadmen, traveling salesmen, etc., who usually do not stay long in one place, but who return home at intervals.
- b Persons who consider the sample unit as their home but who are in a general hospital, that is, a hospital where most patients remain for a short period of time only, regardless of how long their stay has been in the hospital.
- c New-born babies who have not yet left the hospital.
- d Students of any age (including student nurses) who live in the sample unit while attending school. If they are at home on summer vacation at the time of the interview, consider them as household members of their own home.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

- e Crew members of a vessel who consider the sample unit as their home. This rule applies regardless of the length of their trips and regardless of whether they are at home or on the vessel at the time of your visit.
- f Domestic or other employees who live with the household and sleep in the sample unit.
- g Boarders or roomers who regularly sleep in the sample unit.
- h Civilians who usually live in the sample unit but who are temporarily abroad on a vacation or in connection with their work.
- i Persons temporarily visiting with the household but who have no usual place of residence elsewhere.

8 Nonhousehold Members

Do not count the following persons as household members of the sample unit:

- a Persons who were formerly members of the household but who at the time of interview:
 - 1) Are absent because they (regardless of age) are living elsewhere and attending school at the time of the interview. If they are away from the school on summer vacation, do not count them at their school home.
 - 2) Are inmates of correctional or penal institutions, mental institutions, homes for the aged or needy, rest homes or convalescent homes, homes or hospitals for the chronically ill or handicapped, regardless of how long they are expected to remain there.
 - 3) Are now living in nurses' homes, convents or monasteries, or other places in which residents may expect to reside for long periods of time.
 - 4) Are now working abroad if their regular place of duty is abroad.
 - 5) Are members of the Armed Forces not living at home. We are not covering military personnel in this survey. For definition of Armed Forces, see Section 4 of this topic.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

- b Persons temporarily visiting with the household who have a usual place of residence elsewhere to which they are free to return to at any time.
- c Persons who take their meals with the household but usually lodge or sleep elsewhere.
- d Domestic employees or other persons employed by the household who do not sleep in the sample unit. If, however, they occupy quarters which have no cooking equipment but which are on the same property as the sample unit (main house), consider them as household members.

9 Special Classes of Persons

Persons with Two or More Homes - Some persons (or families) have two or more homes and they may spend part of the time in each. For such cases, you must first determine which unit should be considered the person's usual place of residence. This is the home that the person occupies most of the time. Note that this is not necessarily the person's legal or voting residence.

If you are unable to determine the person's usual place of residence because he spends an equal amount of time at each home, consider him to be a resident of the sample unit if he is living there at the time of interview.

Persons Who Work Away from Home - Some persons sleep most of the week in one place to be near their work but may spend weekends or other nonwork periods in another place. Count such persons as members of the household in which they sleep most of the week.

Domestic Employees in Separate House or Cabin - If domestic employees sleep in a separate house or cabin, count them as a separate household if they have separate cooking equipment. If they do not have separate cooking equipment, count them as part of the main household.

Persons Who Have Just Moved Into the Housing Unit - You are to interview the household member living in the housing unit on the day of your interview regardless of when they moved into the unit. For example, suppose you make your first call to interview a household on Tuesday, and find no one at home. For some reason you are unavoidably prevented from calling back until Saturday, when you find that the family you would have interviewed on Tuesday has moved out and another family moved in on Thursday. You will interview the household occupying the unit at the time of your interview, that is, Saturday.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

Citizens of Foreign Countries - Citizens of foreign countries and other persons who are living on the premises of an embassy, ministry, legation, chancellory, or consulate are never to be interviewed. Consider any such place not to be included in any segment.

Citizens of foreign countries, who are not living on the premises of an embassy, etc., and have no usual place of residence elsewhere in the United States are to be considered residents of the sample unit and interviewed only under the following circumstances:

a They are permanently living in the United States.

or

b They are temporarily living in the United States and are going to school here, or are employed here, or are members of the family of a person going to school or employed here.

Persons not included in paragraphs a and b above should be considered as having usual residence elsewhere.

Migratory Workers - Consider migrant farm or ranch workers and logging camp workers as household members of the sample unit IF they have no usual place of residence elsewhere in the United States.

10 Difficult Cases

If you cannot clearly determine from the instructions how to proceed in problem cases, call your office for assistance.

Before calling, however, assemble all the information that you think would be useful to your office in advising you on how to proceed.

2

Question 2, Relationship

2

2. How is -- related to -- (Head of household)?

2. Relationship
HEAD

- 1 Question 2, Relationship - Enter the relationship of each person to the head of the household. If the respondent has previously given you this information, you need not ask this question, but do record the relationship.
 - a Head of Household - There must be one and only one head of the household. In some households you will find two or more unrelated persons sharing a housing unit. Since there can be only one head, designate one as the "Head" and call each of the others "Partner."
 - b Armed Forces Members Living at Home - These are household members about whom we want no health information. However, if one is reported to be the household head, enter this for him and make the family relationships accordingly. If an Armed Forces member is not living at home, designate the wife or other family group head as the household head.
 - c If "Head" Deleted - If the person originally designated as the head of the household is deleted for any reason, other than Armed Forces member living at home, designate another person as "Head" and change the relationship entries of the other household members if necessary.
- 2 Example of Relationship Entries - Some typical examples of relationship entries are: Wife, son, daughter, stepson, stepdaughter, father, mother, grandson, daughter-in-law, aunt, cousin, nephew, roomer, servant, hired hand, partner, and maid.
- 3 Persons Unrelated to the Head - If there are any persons in the household who are not related to the head but are related to each other, their relationship to each other should be shown also. For example, a roomer and his wife must be listed as "roomer" and "roomer's wife;" a maid and her daughter must be shown as "maid" and "maid's daughter."

② Relationship (Continued)

②

- 4 Persons in "Special Places," Rooming Houses, Etc. - In "special places" (institutions, hospitals, hotels for transients, facilities for housing students or workers, summer camps, trailer or tent camps) or rooming or boarding houses, follow the rules in paragraphs 2 and 3 above for relationship entries in question 2.
- 5 Separate Questionnaires for Nonrelated Persons - A separate questionnaire must be completed for each listed unrelated person or family group. After recording the names of all household members and completing questions 1 and 2 on the first questionnaire, transcribe the names and relationships of the unrelated household members to a separate questionnaire. Change the column number of each person to agree with the one on the first questionnaire. For example, a roomer is listed as Person 5. Transcribe his name and relationship to the first column of the extra questionnaire and change the column number from 1 to 5.
 - a For each questionnaire for unrelated persons, fill identification items 1 through 5 and ask question 6b, mailing address. Often an unrelated household member may have a mailing address different from the household head. If the mailing address is the same as that entered in item 6a on the first questionnaire, mark the box "Same as 6a" in question 6i on this questionnaire. If the mailing address is different from that entered in item 6a, enter the mailing address in question 6b as reported by the respondent. Continue the interview for these persons in the prescribed manner after completing the interview for the basic family unit. These specified entries are required on a separate questionnaire even if you know, at this point, there will be no completed interview for the nonrelated person(s).

3

Question 3, Date of Birth, Age, Race, and Sex

3

AGE
RACE
1 W
2 N
3 OT
SEX
1 M
2 F

3. What is --'s date of birth? (Enter date and Age, and circle Race and Sex)	1	Month	Day	Year
--	---	-------	-----	------

1 Ask question 3 for each person, enter date and Age, and circle Race and Sex.

a Age - Obtain the exact date of birth and enter it in the appropriate space, for example, May 25, 1919. If you cannot get the exact date, enter the approximate date, or if you can get only the year, enter DK-DK-1919. From the date of birth, determine the age of the person on his last birthday using the Age Verification Chart. Verify the age with the respondent and then enter it in the "Age" box. For babies under one year of age, enter "Und. 1" in the answer space.

1) If the person refuses to give his own age or birth date or the age or birth date of someone else in the family, make the best estimate you can and indicate that the age is estimated.

a) Record a range of the person's probable age, such as "Est. 10-15 years," "Est. 45-55 years." The following examples represent entries that would not be acceptable age estimates: "Over 25 years," "17+ years," etc. These examples are unacceptable because they do not indicate whether the person is a young adult, middle-aged, or an elderly person.

b Race - Three codes are used for race: "W" for White, "N" for Negro, and "OT" for Other. The race of the respondent can usually be marked by observation. Assume the race of all related persons is the same as that of the respondent unless you learn otherwise. Circle the proper letter when you are recording the person's age. If you cannot fill this item by observation, ask: "What is --'s race?" Use the following codes:

White: Includes Latin-Americans unless they are definitely Negro, Indian, or other nonwhite.

Negro: Black or Negro.

Other: Race other than White or Negro, including Japanese, Chinese, American Indian, Korean, Eskimo, and Hindu.

Code the race of the father for persons of racial mixtures.

③

Date of Birth, Age, Race, and Sex (Continued).

③

- c Sex - Circle the appropriate sex for each person after you have circled the race. The sex of a person can usually be determined from the name or relationship entries. However, names such as Marion and Lynn are used for both males and females. If there is any doubt, ask about the person's sex.

C

Item C and Reference Dates

C

C	1. Record the number of Doctor Visits and Hospitalizations.	DOCTOR	HOSP.
		_____ (NP)	_____ (NP)
	2. Record each condition in the person's column, with the question number(s) where it was reported.	Q. No.	Condition
	Reference dates		
	2-week period _____		
	Dentist and Doctor visit probe _____		
	Hospital probe _____		

1 Item C - Item C is placed in this position on the questionnaire for ready reference when filling succeeding pages.

a Item C1 indicates for each person:

- 1) The number of two-week doctor visits reported.
- 2) The number of hospitalizations reported.

If no doctor visits or hospitalizations are reported for a person, indicate this in C1 by entering a dash (-) in that person's column.

b Item C2 is provided for recording all conditions requiring Condition pages along with identification of where these conditions were reported.

1) Conditions to be Entered in Item C2 - Enter in item C2 any conditions reported in answer to those probe questions that are specifically designed to pick up conditions. These would be health problems or accidents resulting in restricted activity; a doctor visit during the past 2 weeks; limitation of activity, or conditions listed or reported while asking the condition list (question 31). Do not enter in C2 any condition reported past the Hospital page.

2) Source of Condition

a) If a condition is reported during the asking of the probe questions, record in item C2 the number of the question, or if in question 31, the letter, at the time the condition is reported. If a condition is reported in some other part of the interview, record instead, the type of page, abbreviating as follows:

Condition page - Cond.
Two-Week Doctor Visits page - D.V.
Hospital page - Hosp.

(C)

Item C and Reference Dates (Continued)

(C)

- b) If a condition reported in answer to a probe question is recorded in item C2 for a particular person and is reported again in answer to another question, do not record this condition again on another line of item C2. Instead, record the question number in which the condition was reported again. This entry should be made in an unfilled question number column in item C2 by the original question number entry. Do not enter the page type (Cond., D.V., Hosp.) in item C for conditions previously reported. Entries of this kind should be made in item C only when conditions are first reported on these pages. See the following illustration:

C	1. Record the number of Doctor Visits and Hospitalizations.	DOCTOR	HOSP.
		— (NP)	1 (NP)
	2. Record each condition in the person's column, with the question number(s) where it was reported.	Q. No.	Condition
	Reference dates	279	Cataracts
	2-week period Jan. 8 . Jan 21 .	Hsp.	Delivery
	Dentist and Doctor visit probe Jan. 21		
	Hospital probe H2C.1		

2 Reference Dates

- a "Reference dates" on page 2, under the instructions for item C2, will be filled in advance by the Data Collection Center.
- b If additional questionnaires are needed for unrelated household members or for "extra" units, enter the correct beginning and ending dates in this space.
- c If an interview is delayed until the week following interview week, prepare a new calendar card showing the new reference period, that is, the two-week period ending the Sunday night just before your actual interview date. Also, correct the "Reference dates" entered in C2 to reflect the new reference period.

C

Item C and Reference Dates (Continued)

C

- d Two-Week Reference Period - The "past two weeks" refers to the two weeks (14 days) just prior to the week in which the interview is conducted. The two-week period starts with Monday and ends with (and includes) last Sunday night. No days of the interview week are to be included. For example, if the interview is conducted on Tuesday, January 9, 1973, "the past two weeks" would refer to the period beginning on Monday, December 25, 1972, through Sunday night, January 7, 1973. No illness, hospitalization or health-related event starting after January 7 (last Sunday night) would be included, no matter how serious it might be. This principle applies to all succeeding questions.
- 1) If you record something of this kind and afterwards learn that it should not have been recorded, delete or correct the entry, as appropriate, and explain the deletion in a footnote.
 - 2) This rule does not apply to household membership or personal characteristics such as age, marital status or membership in the Armed Forces, all of which apply as of the time of interview.
- e Dentist and Doctor Visit Probe - This date is "last Sunday's" date a year ago, and is the closing date of the two-week reference period. For example, if you interview Wednesday, January 10, 1973, the reference date would be January 7, 1972.
- f Hospital Probe - This date is 13 or 14 months before interview, to pick up hospitalizations which started before the 12-month reference period but which may have extended into it. It is the first of the month which preceded the month in which Monday of interview week fell. For example, if you're interviewing Thursday, February 1, 1973, the Monday of interview week was in January, therefore, the hospital probe reference date is December 1, 1971.

SP

Selecting the Sample Person

SP

Refer to Flashcard _____ to determine Sample Person(s); mark SP box(es) at top of persons' column(s).

1. There will be an entry (R-1, R-2, or R-3) after the word "Flashcard" to indicate the correct flashcard to use when determining the sample person(s).

- a. Determining the Sample Persons

The sampling pattern for determining the sample person is based on the total number of related and unrelated household members. On the flashcard the entries in the first column indicate the number of household members. The numbers in the second column specify the corresponding column numbers of sample persons on the HIS-1.

For example, if R-1 was entered on the HIS-1, and there were five persons in the household, the persons in columns 1 and 4 would be the sample persons for this household.

- b. Marking the HIS-1 for Sample Persons

Mark the "SP" box at the top of the column(s) of selected sample persons.

- c. Extra Units

For extra units, use the same flashcard used for the original sample unit. Enter the flashcard number (R-1, R-2, or R-3) on the questionnaire for the extra unit.

- d. Persons Deleted from the Questionnaire

If a person is deleted from the questionnaire (an X is drawn through his column), do not substitute for him in any way. Include the deleted person in your total count of household members (in column 1 of the flashcard), and enter an X in the "SP" box, if he is selected as a sample person. However, do not interview a sample person who is deleted from the questionnaire.

H

Item H, At Home

H

H	If related persons 17 years old or over are listed in addition to the respondent, say: We would like to have all adults who are at home take part in the interview. Is your --, your --, etc., at home now? If "Yes" ask: Please ask them to join us.	0 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 17
		1 <input type="checkbox"/> At home 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Not at home

- 1 After completing questions 1-3, note the instruction in item H that if related persons 17 years old or over are listed in addition to the respondent, say: "We would like to have all adults who are at home take part in the interview. Is your --, your --, etc., at home now?"
 - a Mark the "At home" or "Not at home" box for each person 17 and over on the basis of the respondent's answer. Mark the "Under 17" box for persons under 17 years of age.
 - b If other eligible respondents are at home, say: "Please ask them to join us." This procedure is a reminder to interview each ADULT for himself for the ensuing health questions if he is at home at the time of the interview. Since the remaining questions are about each person's own health, he should be the best source of information about them.
 - c If "Not at home" is marked for a person who arrives later on in the interview, interview him also, but do not change the original entry. This rule applies even though the person arrives in time to answer some of questions 4-32.
 - d In the case of unrelated persons (partners, roomers, etc.), this "at home" determination is not made until completing the interview for all related members. Record "At home" for an unrelated person at the time you conduct the interview with that person. Persons unrelated to the head of the household who are related to each other are treated the same as any other family group.

<p>This survey is being conducted to collect information on the Nation's health. I will ask about visits to doctors and dentists, illness in the family, and other health related items. (HAND CALENDAR) The next few questions refer to the past 2 weeks, the 2 weeks outlined in red on that calendar, beginning Monday, _____ (date), and ending this past Sunday, _____ (date).</p>		<p>Y (4b) If age: 17+ (5) 6-16 (6) Under 6 (8)</p>
4a. During those 2 weeks, did --- stay in bed because of any illness or injury?	<p>oo <input type="checkbox"/> N b. <input type="checkbox"/> Days</p>	<p>4b. During that 2-week period, how many days did --- stay in bed all or most of the day?</p>
5. During these 2 weeks, how many days did illness or injury keep --- from work? (For females): not counting work around the house?	<p>oo <input type="checkbox"/> None (9) 5. _____ WL days (7)</p>	
6. During those 2 weeks, how many days did illness or injury keep --- from school?	<p>oo <input type="checkbox"/> None (8) 6. _____ SL days</p>	<p>7. On how many of these -- days lost from { work school } did --- stay in bed all or most of the day?</p>
7a. (NOT COUNTING the day(s) { in bed lost from work lost from school }) Were there any (other) days during the past 2 weeks that --- cut down on the things he usually does because of illness or injury?	<p>oo <input type="checkbox"/> None 7. _____ Days</p>	
7b. (Again, not counting the day(s) { in bed lost from work lost from school }) During that period, how many (other) days did he cut down for as much as a day?	<p>oo <input type="checkbox"/> None 8a. 1 Y 2 N (9)</p>	<p>8b. _____ Days</p>

- 1 Read the introduction above question 4a to the respondent once to inform him of the purpose of the survey and some of the topics to be covered during the interview. This introduction also is designed to inform the respondent of the reference period for probe questions 4-11 and 13-16. Do this by handing him the calendar card with the appropriate two-week reference period marked in red and then indicate orally the beginning and ending dates of the two-week reference period as entered in "2 week period" of item C2.
- 2 Ask questions 4-8 to obtain the number of days, if any, that each person in the household remained in bed, lost time from work or school, or restricted his usual activity because of illness or injury during the two weeks preceding the interview.
 - a Ask all appropriate questions, 4-9, as a block for each individual, starting with Person 1. Repeat the procedure for the next related household member and so on.

- 3 Question 4a, Bed Disability Past Two Weeks - When asking question 4a, insert the name of the person you are talking about or his relationship to the respondent. If you are interviewing the wife about Person 1, you would say: "During those two weeks, did your husband stay in bed because of any illness or injury?" If the answer to question 4a is "Yes," ask question 4b. If the response to 4a is "No," ask 5 if the person is 17+. Ask 6 if the person is 6-16; ask 8 if the person is under 6 years of age. These instructions appear in the answer space in 4a and b of the questionnaire.
- 4 Question 4b, How Many Days in Bed - If the answer to 4a is "Yes," ask 4b and record the number of days that the person stayed in bed all or most of the day. Then ask 5, 6, or 8 for that person according to his age.
- a Day in Bed - Any day on which the person was kept in bed either all or most of the day because of illness or injury. All or most of the day is defined as more than half of the daylight hours (or of the hours that the person is usually awake, if he works a night shift). Taking a nap on "general principles" should not be counted as a day in bed. Also, count all days as a patient in a hospital, sanitarium, or nursing home as bed days whether or not the patient was actually lying in bed at the hospital, sanitarium or nursing home. Exclude hospital days for a normal newborn, unless the baby had some complication or illness.
- b Bed - Anything used for sleeping, including sofa, cot or mattress. If a person was on the sofa watching TV because he was too ill to get around, he would be "in bed." The important distinction here is, whether the person was ill enough that he had to be in bed for all or most of the day.
- 5 Question 5, Days Lost from Work - Ask this question to find out if the person you are asking about lost time from work during those two weeks because of illness or injury. Ask it for each individual in the 17+ age group. Record the response in the appropriate space in that person's column. Use the alternate version of the question for females.
- a Work - Paid work as an employee for someone else for wages, salary, commission or pay "in kind" (meals, living quarters, or supplies provided in place of cash wages). Also, include work in the person's own business, professional practice or farm, and work without pay in a business or farm run by a related household member.

Exclude work around the house, volunteer unpaid work, such as for church, Red Cross, or charity, and service in the Armed Forces.

④ ⑧ Two-Week Activity Limitation (Continued)

④ ⑧

- b Work Loss Day - Any scheduled work day when more than half of the day was lost due to an illness or injury. If the person works only part of a day and he loses more than half of that time, it should be counted as a day lost.
- c Disregard School Days - If a person 17 years of age or over goes to school instead of, or in addition to, working, record only the days lost from work (disregarding any days lost from school). Any days lost from school for persons 17 and over should be included in restricted days, question 8.

6 Question 6, Days Lost from School - Ask this question if the person is aged 6-16.

- a School Loss Day - Any scheduled school day when more than half of the day was lost from school due to an illness or injury.

For example, a day when the person did not go to school until after lunch would count as a day lost from school. If the person's regular school day is less than a whole day and that amount of time was lost from school on account of illness or injury, it would also be counted as a whole day lost from school.

- b If the person lost days from school, enter the number in the appropriate person column and go to question 7 or 8.
- c If the respondent indicates that no days were lost from school or that the person was on vacation during this two-week period, mark the "None" box for question 6 and skip to question 8. Also, mark "None" if the child is aged 6-16 but does not attend school.
- d School Vacation - Since school vacation periods are not all the same, ask this question even during periods of the year which might normally be considered school vacation periods.
- e Disregard Work Days - If a person 6 through 16 years of age works instead of going to school, or works and also goes to school, record only the days lost from school (disregarding any days lost from work). Any days lost from work for persons 6 through 16 years of age should be included in days of restricted activity, question 8.

- 7 Check for Number of Days Reported in Questions 5 and 6 - Since hardly anyone works seven days a week or goes to school seven days a week, you should follow up such replies as "The whole two weeks" or "All last week," etc. Do not enter "14" or "7" automatically. Reask the question in order to find out the actual number of days lost from work or school. If a person actually lost 14 days from work or school during "the past two weeks," enter "14" but explain in a footnote that these days were actually lost.
- 8 Question 7, Number of Work-Loss or School-Loss Days in Bed - Ask question 7 only if the respondent reports bed days in question 4b and either work-loss days in question 5 or school-loss days in question 6. If "N" is circled in 4a, or if no days are reported in 4b, skip to question 8.
- a The purpose of question 7 is to determine if any of the bed days and days lost from work or school were the same days. The entry in question 7 can be equal to but not greater than the number of bed days reported in question 4b, or the work/school-loss days reported in question 5 or 6.
- b In asking question 7, insert for the first set of dashes the number of work-loss days or school-loss days recorded in 5 or 6. Select the words within the brackets that fit the situation. For example, if the person lost two days from work, question 7 should be asked as follows: "On how many of these two days lost from work did you stay in bed all or most of the day?" If one school day was lost, ask "On that day John lost from school, did he stay in bed all or most of the day?"
- 9 Question 8a, Restricted Activity Past Two Weeks - Ask question 8a for each person, unless he had 14 days in bed. In this case, circle "N" without asking the question. Question 8a has three purposes:
- To find out if persons under 17 years had work-loss days or persons 17 or over had school-loss days. These should not be recorded in question 5 or 6.
- To find out if, in addition to any bed days or work or school-loss days reported earlier, the person cut down on his usual activities on any other days during the two-week reference period.
- To find out if the person had any cut-down (restricted activity) days during the two week period even though no bed days, school-loss or work-loss days were reported in questions 4-7.

④ - ⑧ Two-Week Activity Limitation (Continued)

④ - ⑧

- a. Things He Usually Does - The things a person usually does are the person's "usual activities." For school children and most adults, "usual activities" would be going to school, working, or keeping house, etc. For children under school age, "usual activities" depend upon whatever the usual pattern is for the child which will, in turn, be affected by the age of the child, weather conditions, etc. For retired or elderly persons, "usual activities" might consist of almost no activity, but cutting down on even a small amount would mean that a person should answer "Yes" to the question.

On Sundays or holidays "usual activities" should be interpreted as the things the person usually does on such days, such as going to church, playing golf, visiting friends or relatives, staying at home and listening to the radio, reading, looking at television, etc.

- 1) The following examples illustrate cases of persons cutting down on the things they usually do because of illness or injury: A person in school was kept away from school, a person who worked away from home was kept away from work; a farmer or a housewife was kept from caring for the farm or the home either completely or had to cut out all but the essential chores; an elderly person who normally takes a daily walk in the park was kept from doing so.
- 2) In borderline cases, where "usual activity" is difficult to determine, accept the respondent's view of what he himself considers to be his "usual activities." For example, a man with a heart condition may still consider his "usual activity" to be "working" even though the heart condition has prevented him from working for a year or more. You should accept his statement that "working" is his "usual activity." In another example, a man may say that a heart attack six months ago forced him to retire from his job or business, he does not expect to return to work, and considers his present "usual activities" to include only those associated with his retirement. The question, then, would refer to those activities.

- b How to Ask - In asking question 8a, use the appropriate words within the brackets if days in bed or work-loss or school-loss days were reported earlier. Otherwise, omit the parenthetical phrase. Therefore, if no bed days or school or work-loss days were reported in questions 4-6, ask 8a as follows: "Were there any days during the past two weeks that -- cut down on the things he usually does because of illness or injury?" If a person had previously reported two work-loss days and one day in bed, the question would be asked as follows: "NOT COUNTING the day in bed and days lost from work, were there any other days during the past two weeks that you cut down on the things you usually do because of illness or injury?"

10 Question 8b, Number of Cut-Down Days - Question 8b is asked to determine the number of cut-down days if the "y" is circled in question 8a. There is a parenthetical statement from which you select the appropriate words to use if any days were reported in 4-6. The procedure is the same as that outlined for question 8a. The parenthetical phrases in 8b are used only if bed, work-loss, or school-loss days were reported previously.

- a Cut Down as Much as a Day - A day of restricted activity (cut down) is a day when a person cuts down on his usual activities for the whole of that day on account of an illness or injury. "Usual activities" for any day mean the things that the person would usually do on that day.

- 1) Restricted activity does not imply complete inactivity but it does imply the minimum of the things a person usually does. A special nap for an hour after lunch does not constitute cutting down on usual activities for as much as a day, nor does the elimination of a heavy chore, such as cleaning ashes out of the furnace or hanging out the wash. All or most of a person's usual activities for the day must have been restricted for the person to have a cut-down day.
- 2) The following are some examples of a person having to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day:

A housewife who expected to clean house after doing the breakfast dishes, then work in the garden and go shopping in the afternoon was forced to rest because of a severe headache, doing nothing after the breakfast dishes until she prepared the evening meal.

A young boy who usually played outside most of the day was confined to the house because of a severe cold.

A garage owner whose usual activities included mechanical and other heavy work was forced to stay in his office directing others, talking to customers, etc., because of his heart condition.

④ - ⑧ Two-Week Activity Limitation (Continued)

④ - ⑧

- b The reference period for question 8 includes Saturdays and Sundays. ALL the days of the week are of equal importance in this question, even though the types of activities which were cut down might not be the same on weekends as on regular weekdays. If necessary, mention this to the respondent. To illustrate this concept, consider the following example:

A man who planned a fishing trip for Saturday and Sunday had to stay home from work Friday and was also too ill to go fishing both on Saturday and Sunday because of a flare-up of his back trouble. Assuming that this is the only time during the past two weeks in which he was bothered by back trouble, the correct entry for question 8b would be "2." The one work-loss day should have been reported in 5.

Question 9, Condition Causing Two-Week Limitation

If one or more days in Q's. 4-8, ask 9; otherwise go to next person.		
9a. What condition caused -- to	{ stay in bed miss work miss school cut down }	9a. Enter condition in item C Ask 9b

9b. Did any other condition cause him to	{ stay in bed miss work miss school cut down }	9b. Y N (NP)

9c. What condition?		9c. Enter condition in item C Reask 9b

- 1 Ask parts a, b, and c of question 9 about each person for whom at least one day was reported in answer to questions 4-8.
- 2 In questions 9a and b, select the phrase or phrases from within the brackets according to the answers you have recorded in questions 4-8 for that person.
 - a If, for example, a person had two bed days in question 4b, one work-loss day in question 5, and three cut-down days in question 8b, question 9a must be asked as follows: "What condition caused you to stay in bed, miss work, or cut down during the past two weeks?" Then enter the condition(s) in item C2 and ask question 9b, "Did any other condition cause you to stay in bed, miss work, or cut down during that period?"
 - b If only cut-down days are recorded (question 8b), you would ask question 9a, using only the phrase "cut down," for example, "What condition caused you to cut down during the past two weeks?" and continue in the manner described above, referring only to "cut down" when asking question 9b.
 - c If "Y" is circled in 9b, ask question 9c and record in item C2 the condition reported. Continue to reask 9b and c (and enter the condition in item C2) until a "No" is received to 9b, then circle "N" and go to the next person.

9

Condition Causing Two-Week Activity Limitation (Continued)

9

3 Caution Regarding Pregnancy, Delivery, and Birth

- a Normal pregnancy is not to be considered as illness but if there are complications which caused restricted activity or medical attention in the past two weeks, the complication(s) (morning sickness, swollen ankles, etc.) should be recorded in item C2.
- b Delivery or childbirth even when normal should be recorded for the mother if it caused restricted activity, that is, bed, work or school loss, or cut-down days during the past two weeks.
 - 1) If the delivery or childbirth occurred during the past two weeks, record "delivery" in item C2.
 - 2) If the delivery or childbirth occurred before the two-week period, record the complications in item C2. If there were no complications, record "delivery" in item C2.
- c Birth during the past two weeks is not to be recorded for the baby unless there were birth complications for the baby or the baby had some other illness. For such cases, enter the specific condition, do not enter just "birth" in item C2.

Question 10, Two-Week Accidents or Injuries

10a. During the past 2 weeks did anyone in the family, that is you, your --, etc., have any (other) accidents or injuries?	Y	N (11)	
b. Who was this? - Mark "Accident or injury" box in person's column.			10b. <input type="checkbox"/> Accident or injury
c. What was the injury?			c. Injury
d. Did anyone have any other accidents or injuries during that period?	Y (Reask 10b and c)	N	
For each person with "Accident or injury," ask:			Y (Enter injury in item C)
e. As a result of the accident, did -- see a doctor or did he cut down on the things he usually does?			a. N

1 Question 10a, How to Ask - This is the first time we ask a "family" style question (once for a family). Insert the names or relationships of all family members when asking the question. If any accident or injury condition has been previously reported, insert the parenthetical "other." For example, "During the past two weeks, did anyone in the family, that is, you, your husband, or your son have any other accidents or injuries?" If the response is "No," circle "N" and go to question 11.

a Accidents and Injuries - The terms "accident" and "injury" may be used interchangeably. There are cases, however, when an injury may occur when an accident is not involved, for example, a war injury, a shooting, a stabbing, etc.

b Injury - Cuts, bruises, burns, sprains, fractures, etc. "Insect stings," "animal bites," "sunburn," "sun poisoning," "heat or sun strokes," "blister," "frostbite," "frozen feet" and "poisoning" are also considered as injuries.

c Poisoning - Illnesses resulting from swallowing, drinking, breathing or coming in contact with some poisonous substance or gas. Poisoning may also occur from an overdose of a substance that is nonpoisonous when taken in normal doses. Exclude conditions which are diseases or illnesses, such as "poison oak," "poison ivy," "ptomaine or food poisoning."

2 Question 10b, How to Record - If "Yes" is reported in 10a, circle "Y" and ask 10b. Mark the "Accident or injury" box in each person's column for whom a two-week accident or injury was reported.

⑩ Two-Week Accidents or Injuries (Continued)

⑩

- 3 Question 10c, What Was the Injury - Ask question 10c for each person with "Accident or injury" marked in 10b. If the respondent reports an injury, record the injury (cut hand, bruised leg; etc.) in the answer space for 10c. If there was an accident but no injury, enter the word "Accident" in the answer space for 10c. An example of this might be a person in a car accident who received no injury.

- 4 Question 10d, Any Other Accidents or Injuries - Ask question 10d as a reminder to the respondent to report persons who had any other accidents or injuries during the past two weeks. If a "Yes" answer is obtained, reask 10b and c and enter the response in 10c until a final "No" is received. Then go to 10e.

- 5 Question 10e, See a Doctor or Cut Down - Ask question 10e for each person with the "Accident or Injury" box marked. If the person did not see a doctor or cut down on the things he usually does, circle "N" in his column and go to the next person reporting an accident or injury or to the next question as appropriate. If the response to 10e is "Yes," circle "Y" in that person's column and enter the question 10c entry in item C2. If a person had more than one accident or injury during the past two weeks, each one which resulted in a doctor visit or cut down activity must be entered separately in item C2.
 - a Doctor - Contact between a person and a doctor for the purpose of obtaining medical advice, treatment, or examination. Include telephone calls to or from a doctor, visits to a doctor's office, a clinic, a medical center, or the outpatient department of a hospital where a person goes for treatment or examination ordered by a doctor but where he may not actually see or talk to a doctor. If you learn that a person saw a dentist for this accident or injury, consider this as "Yes."

11a. During the past 2 weeks, did anyone in the family, that is you, your --, etc., go to a dentist?	Y	N (12)	
11b. Who was this? - Mark "Dental visit," box in person's column.			11b. <input type="checkbox"/> Dental visit
11c. During the past 2 weeks, did anyone else in the family go to a dentist? If "Dental visit," ask:	Y (Reask 11b and c)	N	
11d. During the past 2 weeks, how many times did -- go to a dentist?			11d. No. of dental visits (NP)

- 1 Ask question 11a once for a family. Insert the names or relationships of all family members when asking the question. If the answer is "No," go to question 12 and leave the remaining parts of question 11 blank.
 - a Dentist - A person who has been trained in the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of diseases of the teeth and adjacent tissues. Some examples are: Oral surgeon, orthodontist, periodontist, dental hygienist.
 - b Exclude visits for dental services given on a mass basis, such as examinations given a group of children at school. If you are in doubt, include the visit and explain the circumstances in a footnote.
- 2 If "Yes" is received to question 11a, ask question 11b to find out which persons in the family went to the dentist during the two-week reference period. Mark the "Dental visit" box in the appropriate column for each person who went to a dentist during the past two weeks.
- 3 Ask question 11c as a reminder to the respondent to report any other persons who visited a dentist during the past two weeks.
- 4 If the answer to 11c is "Yes," reask 11b and c until you get a final "No" answer to 11c. Then circle "N" and go to question 11d.
- 5 Ask question 11d only for those persons who reported a two-week dental visit to obtain the number of times the person went to a dentist during that period.

3/20/07 at 8:57c

11

Question 12, Twelve-Month Dental Visits

Do not ask for children 1 yr. old and under.	
12a. During the past 12 months (that is, since _____ (date) _____ a year ago), about how many visits did --- make to a dentist? (Include the --- visits you already told me about.)	00 <input type="checkbox"/> None
b. ABOUT how long has it been since ---LAST went to a dentist?	12a. _____ Number of visits
	1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-week dental visit
	2 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 weeks not reported (Q.11)
	3 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 weeks-6 months
	4 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 months
	5 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 year
	6 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 years
	7 <input type="checkbox"/> 5+ years
	8 <input type="checkbox"/> Never

- 1 Ask question 12 as a block for each person, after completing question 11 for all family members.
- 2 Question 12a, Twelve-Month Dental Visits - Ask question 12a inserting the date entered in "Reference dates" for "Dentist and Doctor visit probe" the first time the question is asked and at any other time you feel it necessary. If any two-week dental visits have been reported for this person, add the parenthetical statement inserting the number of visits previously reported for the dashes.
 - a If "checkup" is mentioned, rephrase the question by asking "Including any visits for a checkup, how many separate visits did you make to a dentist since --- a year ago?" or something similar. Some respondents have two or three visits for fillings or other work as a result of a checkup but only report "One," meaning one checkup. We want to count each visit.
 - b Enter the number of visits reported on the line provided, or mark the "None" box.
 - c For children one year old and under, mark the "None" box without asking the question even if dental visits have been reported for them.

- 3 Question 12b, Interval Since Last Saw Dentist - Mark the "2-week dental visit" box in question 12b, without asking the question, for persons who have reported a two-week dental visit. Mark the "Never" box, without asking the question, for children age one or under even if dental visits have been reported for them. Ask 12b for all other persons and mark the appropriate answer box in each person's column as follows:

Past 2 weeks not reported - Mark this box if at this point the respondent reports a visit during the two-week reference period. Also, mark the "Dental visit" box in 11b and ask question 11d for that person. Record the new response in the answer space for this question for this person. It is not necessary to change the entries in 11a and 11c.

2 weeks—6 months - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was before the two-week reference period but within the six-month period.

Over 6—12 months - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was between six and 12 months ago.

1 year - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was 12 or more months ago but less than two years ago.

2—4 years - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was two or more years ago but less than five years ago.

5+ years - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was five or more years ago.

Never - Mark this box if the person has never visited a dentist or is under two years old.

13

Question 13, Two-Week Doctor Visits

13

13. During the past 2 weeks (the 2 weeks outlined in red on that calendar) how many times did -- see a medical doctor?	13.	00 <input type="checkbox"/> None _____ Number of visits } (NP)
--	-----	---

- 1 Question 13, Two-Week Doctor Visits - Ask question 13 for each person, using the parenthetical phrase "the two weeks outlined in red on that calendar," as often as necessary. The respondent must be kept aware of the two-week period and should be referred to the calendar at convenient points in the interview, especially in a large household. Mark the "None" box or enter the number of visits reported on the line provided.
 - a Doctor - The term "doctor" covers only medical doctors (MD) and osteopathic physicians (DO). Include all visits to medical doctors regardless of whether they are general practitioners or specialists. Ophthalmologists have an MD degree and are counted as medical specialists.
 - 1) Do not count dentists, optometrists or other practitioners (such as chiropractors) who do not have an MD degree.
 - b Doctor "Visit" - A single contact between a person and a doctor for the purpose of obtaining medical advice, treatment or examination.
 - 1) Include telephone calls to or from a doctor (except requests for appointments or inquiries about a bill), visits to a doctor's office, a clinic, a medical center and the outpatient department of a hospital where a person goes for treatment or examination ordered by a doctor but where he may not actually see or talk to a doctor. Also to be included as visits, are calls to the doctor concerning the obtaining or renewal of a prescription. All these types of "visits" may be reported in question 13 but some of them are the kind people generally tend to forget; so questions 14 and 15 were designed specifically to remind the respondent about them.

- 2) Visits for shots or examinations (such as chest X-rays) administered on a mass basis are to be excluded. Thus, if the person went to a clinic, a mobile unit or some similar place to receive an immunization, a single chest X-ray or a certain diagnostic procedure which was being administered identically to all persons who were at the place for this purpose, this would not be counted as a visit.

NOTE: However, physicals for athletes or the armed services are not mass visits, and are included in the doctor visits questions.

- 3) Do not count visits a doctor made to see the person while he was an inpatient in the hospital. A hospital inpatient is defined as a patient who remains overnight or longer.

14

Question 14, Two-Week Shots, X-Rays, Tests, and Examinations

14

(Besides those visits)			
14a. During that 2-week period did anyone in the family go to a doctor's office or clinic for shots, X-rays, tests, or examinations?	Y N (15)		
b. Who was this? - Mark "Doctor visit" box in person's column.		14b. <input type="checkbox"/> Doctor visit	
c. Anyone else?	Y (Reask 14b and c) N		
If "Doctor visit," ask:			
d. How many times did -- visit the doctor during that period?		d. _____ Number of visits (NP)	

- 1 The wording of question 14a depends on the answer to question 13. If one or more visits have been reported in question 13, ask question 14a with the introductory parenthetical phrase. For example, if there were two persons in the household, head and wife, and three visits were reported in question 13 for the head, ask question 14a as follows:
"Besides those visits during that two-week period, did either of you go to a doctor's office or clinic for shots, X-rays, tests, or examinations."
- 2 If no visits have been reported in question 13, ask question 14a without including the parenthetical phrase.
- 3 If the answer to 14a is "Yes," continue to ask questions 14b and c until you get a "No" answer to 14c. Then ask 14d for each person with the "Doctor visit" box marked in 14b.
 - a Starting with the first person listed for whom the "Doctor visit" box has been marked in question 14b, ask question 14d and record the number of doctor visits that are reported. Remember, any visits recorded in question 13 should not be recorded in question 14.

Question 15, Two-Week Medical Advice by Phone

15a. During that period, did anyone in the family get any medical advice from a doctor over the telephone?	Y N (16)		
b. Who was the phone call about? ↓ Mark "Phone call" box in person's column.		15b.	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone call
c. Any calls about anyone else?	Y (Reask 15b and c) N		
If "Phone call," ask:			
d. How many telephone calls were made to get medical advice about -- ?		d.	____ Number of calls (NP)

- 1 Ask question 15a regardless of the answers to questions 13 and 14.
- 2 For this question, include telephone calls to or from the doctor or doctor's office which are related to treatment or advice given by the doctor directly or transmitted through the nurse. Do not count telephone calls solely for making an appointment, discussing a bill, or calls confined to some topic not directly related to the person's health.
- 3 If telephone calls have already been reported in the earlier "visit" questions, do not record them again in question 15.
- 4 The procedure for asking questions 15a-d is the same as that for questions 14a-d.

short at 90, =

Question 16, Condition Causing Two-Week Medical Advice

Fill item C, (DOCTOR), from Q. 13-15 for all persons. Ask Q. 16a for each person with visits in DOCTOR box.		<input type="checkbox"/> Condition (16a) THEN 16a)
16a. For what condition did -- see or talk to a doctor during the past 2 weeks?	16a.	<input type="checkbox"/> Pregnancy (16e) <input type="checkbox"/> No condition
b. Did -- see or talk to a doctor about any specific condition?	b.	Y N (NP)
c. What condition?	c.	Enter condition in item C and ask 16d
d. During that period, did -- see or talk to a doctor about any other condition?	d.	Y (16c) N (NP)
e. During the past 2 weeks was -- sick because of her pregnancy?	e.	Y N (16d)
f. What was the matter?	f.	Enter condition in item C (16c)

1. Make Entry in "DOCTOR" Box in C1 - Review the entries in questions 13-15 for each person and enter the total number of doctor visits reported in the "DOCTOR" box in C1 in each person's column before going to question 16.

a. The following illustration will give an example of how to record the visits reported in questions 13-15 in item C1.

1. Record the number of Doctor

DOCTOR	HOSP.	DOCTOR	HOSP.	DOCTOR	HOSP.
1				2	

13. During the past 2 weeks (the 2 times did -- see a medical d.

(Besides those visits)

14a. During that 2-week period clinic for shots, X-rays,

b. Who was this? - Mark

c. Anyone else?

If "Doctor visit,"

d. How many times

15a. During that period a doctor over

b. Who was the

c. Any calls

If "Phone

d. How many

13.	14.	15.
<input type="checkbox"/> None Number of visits (NP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Doctor visit Number of visits (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None Number of visits (NP)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Doctor visit Number of visits (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> Doctor visit Number of visits (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> Doctor visit Number of visits (NP)
<input type="checkbox"/> Phone call Number of calls (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone call Number of calls (NP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Phone call Number of calls (NP)

- 2 Question 16 - Ask question 16 for each person with doctor visits reported in questions 13-15 to find out the specific conditions causing the visit.
- a Question 16a, For What Condition - Ask question 16a and record in item C2 each condition for that person after marking the "Condition" box. Then go to 16d. If in answer to question 16a, no specific condition is reported but the respondent reports pregnancy as the reason for the doctor visit, mark the "Pregnancy" box in that person's column and skip to question 16e. If the reason for the doctor visit(s) was for an examination or preventive care only, mark the "No condition" box in question 16a, and ask 16b for that person.
- b Question 16b and c, Any Specific Condition - Ask question 16b only if the "No condition" box is marked in question 16a. It is asked as an additional probe to determine if the person saw the doctor about any specific condition, and if so, what that condition was. If "Yes" is received in 16b, record the condition reported in answer to 16c in item C2 in the appropriate person's column, then ask question 16d. If "No" is received to 16b, circle "N," go to the next person and ask question 16a, if it is required.
- c Question 16c, Any Other Condition - Ask question 16c as a reminder to the respondent about any other condition for which treatment or advice was received during the doctor visit(s). If "Yes" is received in 16c, circle "Y" and reask 16c and 16d until you get a "No" response to question 16c. Record all conditions reported in answer to 16c in item C2. Once you get a "No" response to question 16c, circle "N" and go to the next person and ask question 16a, if it is required.
- d Questions 16e and f, Pregnancy - Ask questions 16e and f only if the "Pregnancy" box is marked in question 16a.
- 1) Question 16e, Sick Because of Pregnancy - The purpose of 16e is to find out if there was any sickness during the past two weeks because of the pregnancy. Pregnancy is not considered an illness condition and should not be recorded in item C2 unless there were some complications or illness conditions associated with it during the past two weeks. "Sick" means whatever the respondent thinks it means, make no attempt to define it to her. If the response is "No," ask 16d to determine if the person saw or talked to a doctor about any other condition. Follow the instructions given for question 16d above.
- 2) Question 16f, Condition of Pregnancy - If the respondent reports some sickness during the past two weeks because of the pregnancy ("Yes" in 16e), ask question 16f and record the condition in item C2 for that person; then ask 16d to determine if the person saw or talked to a doctor about any other condition. Follow the instructions given for question 16d above.

Question 17, Twelve-Month Doctor Visits

<p>17a. During the past 12 months, (that is since _____ a year ago), about how many times did -- see or talk to a medical doctor? (Do not count doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.) (Include the -- visits you already told me about.)</p>	<p>17a. 000 <input type="checkbox"/> Only when in hospital 000 <input type="checkbox"/> None _____ Number of visits</p>
<p>b. ABOUT how long has it been since -- LAST saw or talked to a medical doctor?</p>	<p>b. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-week DV 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 weeks not reported (O.'s 13 and 16) 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos. 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos. 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 year 6 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 years 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 5+ years 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Never</p> <p>Mark "12 Mo. DV" box in SP column.</p>

- 1 Ask both parts of question 17 as a block for each person after completing question 16 for all family members.
- 2 Question 17a, Twelve-Month Doctor Visits - Ask question 17a inserting the date entered in "Reference dates" for "Dentist and Doctor visit probe" and include the first parenthetical statement the first time the question is asked and at any other time you feel it necessary. If any two-week doctor visits have been reported for this person, include the second parenthetical statement inserting for the dashes the number of doctor visits previously reported.
 - a If "checkup" is mentioned, rephrase the question by asking "Including any visits for a checkup, how many separate visits did you make to a doctor since -- a year ago?" Here, as in the dental visit question, we want to count each visit.
 - b Enter the number of visits reported on the line provided or mark the "None" box.
 - c If you learn that any of the visits reported in question 13 or 14 occurred while the person was a patient in the hospital, correct the answer(s) to exclude the inpatient visits. If all of the person's visits during the 12-month period were while in the hospital, mark the "Only when in hospital" box.
- 3 Question 17b, Interval Since Last Saw Doctor - Seeing a doctor while a hospital inpatient is included in 17b, but not in 17a.

Mark the "2-week DV" box in 17b, without asking the question, for persons who have reported a two-week doctor visit. Ask 17b for all other persons and mark the appropriate answer box in each person's column as follows:

Past 2 weeks not reported - Mark this box if at this point the respondent reports a visit during the two-week reference period.

This might happen occasionally when the respondent misunderstands questions 13-15 or forgets to report a visit that should have been reported earlier. For these cases, mark this box and reask questions 13 and 16 for that person. Make the necessary corrections in question 13 and enter the number of doctor visits in the answer space. Correct the entry in the "DOCTOR" box in item C1 for that person. Reask 16 and record in item C2 any new condition reported and verify or correct 17a.

Make corrections to the two-week doctor visit probe questions only when asking this question. Do not change the entries in questions 13-15, because of any information given later in the interview but do correct C1.

NOTE: If the only doctor seen during the past two weeks was while an inpatient in a hospital, do not mark a box in 17b but footnote the situation.

Do not include dental visits in question 17. If you learn these are dental visits, rephrase the questions to "Exclude the dental visit you told me about," and "... last saw or talked to a medical doctor, not counting the dentist?"

2 weeks—6 months - Mark this box if the person's last doctor visit was before the two-week reference period but within the six-month period.

Over 6—12 months - Mark this box if the person's last doctor visit was between six and 12 months ago.

NOTE: Ignore the skip instruction, "Mark 12 Mo. DV box in SP column." Delete this box at the top of each column when you receive your assignment.

1 year - Mark this box if the person's last doctor visit was 12 or more months ago but less than two years ago.

2—4 years - Mark this box if the person's last doctor visit was two or more years ago but less than five years ago.

5+ years - Mark this box if the person's last doctor visit was five or more years ago.

Never - Mark this box if a person has never seen or talked to a medical doctor.

Questions 18 and 19, Major Activity

Ages 17+	<p>18a. What was -- doing most of the past 12 months - (For males): working or doing something else? If "something else," ask: b. What was -- doing? If 45+ years and was not "working," "keeping house," or "going to school," ask: c. Is -- retired? d. If "retired," ask: Did he retire because of his health?</p>	18. & 19. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Working (23c) 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Keeping house (23b) 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Retired, health (22) 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Retired, other (22) 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Going to school (25)
Ages 6-16	<p>19a. What was -- doing most of the past 12 months - going to school or doing something else? If "something else," ask: b. What was -- doing?</p>	6 <input type="checkbox"/> 17+ something else (22) 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 6-16 something else (22)
Ages under 6		8 <input type="checkbox"/> 1-5 years (21) 9 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 1 (21)

- 1 Ask questions 18-19 as a block for each person. The instructions in the left margin indicate which question to ask first, or item to mark, depending on the person's age.
- 2 Ask all persons 17 years or older question 18a first; all persons 6-16 years of age question 19a first. For children under six, mark either the "1-5 years" box or the "Under 1" box.
- 3 As a guide to the proper order of asking questions 18-27, instructions have been printed to the right of each answer space indicating where to go next when you are to skip to another question.
- 4 Questions 18 and 19, Main Activity During Past 12 Months - Questions 18 and 19 ask what the person was doing most of the past 12 months. Emphasize the phrase "most of the past 12 months" to remind the respondent you are referring to the entire year, not just to the present time.
 - a If a person says that he has had more than one kind of activity, mark the activity at which the person spent the most time during the past 12 months. Thus, if a woman has kept house and also worked, mark the box which describes the activity that took up most of her time during the past 12 months. If the person spent equal time at two types of activities, select the one which the person considers more important.

- 5 How to Ask Questions 18a-d, Persons Aged 17 Years and Over - When asking these questions for males, ask question 18a as follows: "What was -- doing most of the past 12 months (pause and continue) working or doing something else?" Ask the two parts of the question in succession without waiting for a reply to the first part. Ask the question similarly for females, but use the alternate wording. Do not ask men if they were keeping house, but if the respondent says a man was keeping house most of the past 12 months, mark the box "Keeping house."
- a If the response to 18a fits any of the appropriate boxes, "Working," "Keeping house," or "Going to school," mark that box.
 - b If the response is "Something else," ask question 18b. If this response corresponds to one of the check boxes, mark the appropriate one. If the response is "Retired," ask 18d. If the person is aged 17-44 and the response to 18b does not correspond to one of the first five check boxes, mark the "17+ something else" box.
 - c If the person is 45 years old or over and the response to question 18b does not correspond to one of the first four check boxes, ask question 18c. If the response to question 18c is "Yes," ask 18d. If the response to 18c is "No," mark the "17+ something else" box.
 - d If the response to any part of 18a-c is "Retired," ask 18d. If this is "Yes," mark the "Retired, health" box. If any other reason for retirement is given, or if the response is "No," mark the "Retired, other" box.
 - e Consider persons in the Armed Forces most of the past 12 months and now separated from the service, as "17+ something else."
- 6 Questions 19a and b, Persons 6-16 Years of Age - Ask question 19a about all persons aged 6-16 years. If the response is "Going to school," "Working" or "Keeping house," mark the appropriate box and follow the instructions in the parentheses. If "Something else" is the response, ask question 19b. If the response to 19b cannot be assigned to one of the check boxes, mark the "6-16 something else" box.

20

Question 20, Limitation of Major Activity
for Children 1-5 Years of Age

20

20a. Is -- able to take part at all in ordinary play with other children?	20a.	Y	1 N (27)
b. Is he limited in the kind of play he can do because of his health?	b.	2 Y (27)	N
c. Is he limited in the amount of play because of his health?	c.	2 Y (27)	N (26)

- 1 Question 20a, Able to Take Part in Ordinary Play - Ask question 20a to determine if the child can take part at all in ordinary play.
- 2 Question 20b, Limited in Kind of Play - Ask question 20b if "Yes" in 20a to determine if the child is limited in the kind of play he can do because of his health. If, for example, a child is unable to play strenuous games or is unable to run or jump or climb because of his health, he would be limited in the "kind of play he can do because of his health."
- 3 Question 20c, Limited in Amount of Play - Ask question 20c if "No" in 20b to determine if the child is limited in the amount of play he can do because of his health. If a child needs special rest periods or is unable to play for long periods at a time because of his health, consider him as "limited in the amount of play."

21

Question 21, Limitation of Activity for Children Under
One Year of Age

21

21a. Is -- limited in any way because of his health?	21a.	Y	S N (NP)
b. In what way is he limited? Record limitation, not condition.	b.		(27)

- 1 Question 21a, Limited in Any Way - For all children under one year of age, ask question 21a.
- 2 Question 21b, Limited in What Way - If "Y" is circled in question 21a, ask question 21b. If a condition is given in response to question 21a or b, reask 21b to determine how the child is limited. Enter the condition if no other information is given.
 - a A limitation of a child under one year of age might include extra long rest periods, limited play activity, and so forth.

Question 22, Retired or "17+ Something Else"

22a. Does -- health now keep him from working?	22a.	1 Y (27)	N
b. Is he limited in the kind of work he could do because of his health?	b.	2 Y (27)	N
c. Is he limited in the amount of work he could do because of his health?	c.	2 Y (27)	N
d. Is he limited in the kind or amount of other activities because of his health?	d.	3 Y (27)	N (26)

- 1 Question 22a, Health Keeps from Working - If the person's major activity was reported as "Retired, health," "Retired, other" or "17+ something else," ask question 22a to find out if the person's health presently keeps him from working. Many times a person who has retired from one job because of health, is able to do some other kind of work, for example, the bricklayer who retired because of a bad back is now the manager of a retail liquor store.
- 2 Question 22b, Limited in Kind of Work - Ask question 22b only if "N" is circled in question 22a to determine if the person's health would limit the kind of work he could do if he were to work. Since the person, in most cases, will not presently be working, the word "could" in 22b and c is used to convey the idea that if the person was presently working, would he be limited by his health.
- 3 Question 22c, Limited in Amount of Work - Ask question 22c only if "N" is circled in 22b to determine if the person's health would limit the amount of work he could do if he were to work.
- 4 Question 22d, Limitation in Kind or Amount of Other Activities - Ask question 22d only if "N" is circled in 22c to determine if the person's health limits the kind or amount of other activities. The person's other activities include anything other than work.

Question 23, Limited in Kind or Amount of Work or Housework

23a. Does -- NOW have a job?	23a.	Y (23c)	N
b. In terms of health, is -- NOW able to (work - keep house) at all?	b.	Y	1 N (27)
c. Is he limited in the kind of (work - housework) he can do because of his health?	c.	2 Y (27)	N
d. Is he limited in the amount of (work - housework) he can do because of his health?	d.	2 Y (27)	N
e. Is he limited in the kind or amount of other activities because of his health?	e.	1 Y (27)	N (26)

- 1 Question 23a, Now Have a Job - Ask question 23a of all persons who reported "Working" in question 18 or 19 to determine if they presently have a job.
- 2 Question 23b, Now Able to Work or Keep House at All - Ask question 23b of all persons whose usual activity was working, but who do not have a job now, and of persons whose usual activity was keeping house. When asking 23b-d, select the appropriate word within the parentheses.

The concept of "unable" means general overall inability to work or keep house because of some illness or injury.
- 3 Question 23c, Limited in Kind of Work or Housework - Ask question 23c if "Y" is circled in 23b.
 - a Limitation in the kind of work a person can do because of his health might include such things as: A person is unable to do certain kinds of manual work because of his health, such as lifting or carrying materials, or a person is unable to work where a lot of standing or walking is required.
 - b Limitation in the kind of housework a person is able to do because of health might include such things as: A housewife is unable to do certain kinds of housework which require her to lift heavy materials or do strenuous housework, such as scrubbing floors.
- 4 Question 23d, Limited in Amount of Work or Housework - Ask question 23d of all persons who report "No" in 23c.
 - a Limited in the amount of work or housework a person can do because of his health might include such things as: A person is unable to work full time or must have periodic rest periods because of his health.
- 5 Question 23e, Limited in Other Activities - Ask question 23e if "N" is circled in question 23d to determine if the person, although not limited in his main activity, is limited in other types of activities.
 - a Limited in kind or amount of other activities refers to those persons who are only limited in their outside activities. For example, limited in participating in sports, clubs, hobbies, church, civic projects, athletics, games, etc.

24 - 25

Questions 24 and 25, "6-16 Something Else,"
and "Going to School"

24 - 25

24. In terms of health would -- be able to go to school?	24.	Y	N (27)
25a. Does (would) -- have to go to a certain type of school because of his health?	25a.	2 Y (27)	N
b. Is he (would he be) limited in school attendance because of his health?	b.	2 Y (27)	N
c. Is he limited in the kind or amount of other activities because of his health?	c.	3 Y (27)	N (26)

- 1 Question 24, Able to go to School - Ask question 24 only if the "6-16 something else" box is marked in questions 18 and 19. It is asked to determine if the person is able to go to school, although his major activity during the past 12 months was something else.
- 2 Question 25, Limited to Certain Types of Schools or Kind of School Activity - Ask question 25 about those persons reported in questions 18 and 19 as "Going to school" or "6-16 something else" but able to go to school ("Y" circled in 24).
 - a Questions 25a and b, Limited to Certain Types of Schools or in School Attendance - When "Y" has been circled in 24, ask 25a and b using the parenthetical phrase (would) and (would he be).
 - 1) The concept of limited to certain types of school or in school attendance is similar to the concepts already covered. Examples of this type of limitation are as follows:

Need special schools or special teaching.

or

Can attend school for only part of the day.
 - b Question 25c, Limited in Kind or Amount of Other Activities - Ask question 25c to determine if a person, although not limited in school attendance, is limited in other types of activities. For purposes of this question, other activities might include participation in various recreation or sporting activities.

26

Question 26, Limited in ANY WAY

26

26a. Is -- limited in ANY WAY because of a disability or health?	26a.	4 Y	5 N (NP)
b. In what way is he limited? Record limitation, not condition.	b.	_____	

- 1 Ask question 26 about all persons 1+ years of age who did not report any activity limitation in question 20, 22, 23, or 25.
 - a Question 26 serves as a catchall question to remind the respondent of limitations that were not reported in answer to earlier questions. "Disability" is included in question 26, because some people do not think of missing limbs and things of that nature as health problems.
 - b If a condition is given in response to question 26a or b, reask 26b to determine how the person is limited. Enter the condition if no other information is given.

27

Question 27, How Long Limited and Cause

27

<p>27a. About how long has he { <i>been limited in -- been unable to -- had to go to a certain type of school?</i> }</p>	<p>27a. 000 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 month 1 ___ Mos. 2 ___ Yrs.</p>
<p>b. What (other) condition causes this limitation? if "old age" only, ask: Is this limitation caused by any specific condition?</p>	<p>b. Enter condition in item C and ask c <input type="checkbox"/> Old age only (NP)</p>
<p>c. Is this limitation caused by any other condition?</p>	<p>c. Y (Reask b and c) N</p>
<p>Mark box or ask: d. Which of these conditions would you say is the MAIN cause of his limitation?</p>	<p>d. <input type="checkbox"/> Only 1 condition Enter main condition</p>

- 1 Ask question 27 of all persons who reported some kind of activity limitation in questions 20-26 to determine how long the person had this limitation and what condition causes it. If no limitations are reported, leave this question blank.
- 2 How Long Had This Limitation - In question 27a, we want to know the length of time the person has been limited by this health problem, not how long the person has had the condition causing the limitation.
 - a In asking question 27a choose the appropriate phrase within the brackets and add to it the italicized portion of the question where the limitation was reported. For example, if the response to 22b was "Yes," question 27a should be asked: "About how long has he been limited in the kind of work he could do?"
 - b Insert the word "Work" when asking question 27 if the limitation is reported in question 22a.
 - c When a limitation is reported in question 21 or 26, insert the respondent's description of the limitation when asking 27, for example, "About how long has he been unable to drive a car?" If the final answer to question 26 is a condition, ask question 27, "About how long has he been limited by his ...?"

3 Questions 27b-d, Condition Causing Limitation - Ask questions 27b-d to determine what condition causes a person's activity limitation and if more than one is reported, which one is the main cause of the limitation. Record the condition(s) in item C2 using "27" as the source.

a How to Ask - Ask question 27b and enter the condition in that person's column in item C2. Then ask question 27c to give the respondent an opportunity to report any other condition which may also be causing the limitation. Any additional conditions reported should also be recorded in that person's column in item C2. Continue to reask 27b using the parenthetical "(other)" and 27c until a "No" is obtained. Then circle "N" in that person's column in 27c and go to question 27d.

1) If you have received a condition in response to question 21 or 26, skip 27b and ask 27c.

b "Old Age" is Reported - Occasionally the answer given to question 27b will be "Old age." Do not enter "Old age" in item C2. Instead, ask the alternate question below question 27b. If the response to this question is "Yes," find out what specific condition causes this limitation by reasking question 27b. Then record the condition in item C2. Continue to ask questions 27b and c recording all additional conditions causing the limitation in item C2. If the limitation can be attributed to no other condition, mark the "Old age only" box, leave 27c and d blank and go to the next person.

c Limitations Due to Pregnancy or Recent Injuries - If the only condition(s) reported in answer to question 27 is

pregnancy

or

an injury which occurred less than three months ago that did not result in obvious permanent disability, such as the loss of a limb,

enter the name of the condition in a footnote. Reask the question which picked up the limitation using an introductory statement, such as "Except for your broken leg, would you be limited in the kind of work you could do because of your health?" and correct the original entry. Continue to ask any other appropriate limitation questions for this person. Do not make entries in item C to indicate that pregnancy or recent injuries, as specified above, was reported in answer to question 27.

27

How Long Limited and Cause (Continued)

27

- d Main Condition - Question 27d determines which condition is the main cause of a person's activity limitation when two or more conditions have been reported in questions 27b and c.
- 1) If only one condition has been reported in questions 27b and c, mark the "Only one condition" box in that person's column, and omit question 27d.
 - 2) After asking question 27d, enter the condition that the respondent says is the main cause of the activity limitation in the answer space for that person, then go to the next person. If in response to question 27d, the respondent mentions a condition not previously reported, enter that condition in 27d and also in item C2.
 - 3) If the respondent is unable to determine the main cause from several, indicate this by an entry of "unable to select main cause," "all the same," "both," or something similar.

Question 28, Hospitalizations Since Specified Date

28a. Was -- a patient in a hospital at any time since (date) a year ago?	28a.	Y N (Item C)
b. How many times was -- in a hospital since (date) a year ago?	b.	____ Times (Item C)

- 1 Although the survey is primarily concerned with hospitalizations which occurred during the past 12 months, for statistical purposes, we also need to know about hospitalizations which occurred just before the past 12 months. Also, people tend to forget hospitalizations which started before the "past 12 months" but which actually extended into the 12-month period. For these reasons the hospitalization probe question is asked for a period of 13 to 14 months.
- 2 Ask question 28a separately for each household member, inserting the "Reference date" entered in C2 for the "Hospital probe" when asking these questions. If no hospitalizations are reported, circle "N" in 28a and enter a dash (—) in the "HOSP." box in item C1. Then go to the next person.
- 3 Ask 28b for each person for whom the answer to question 28a is "Yes." Enter the number of times in the column for that person and in the "HOSP." box of item C1.
- 4 Patient in a hospital - being admitted and staying overnight or longer in a hospital. Exclude visits to emergency rooms, or outpatient clinics.

29

Question 29, Stays in Nursing Homes, Etc.

29

29a. Was anyone in the family in a nursing home, convalescent home, or similar place since <u> </u> (date) a year ago?	Y	N (30)
b. Who was this? - Circle "Y" in person's column.	29b.	Y
For each "Y" circled, ask: c. During that period, how many times was --- in a nursing home or similar place?	c.	: Times (Item C)

- 1 Question 29 asks about stays in nursing homes, convalescent homes, rest homes and the like. For the purpose of this survey, a "stay" in any one of these kind of places is counted the same as a hospital "stay."
 - a "Nursing home, convalescent home or similar place," means any type of home, sanitarium or other such type of place which provides medical or personal care to persons because of health reasons, advanced age or the like. Unlike patients in general hospitals, patients in these places are apt to remain for long periods of time. Some examples of places of the kind referred to in question 29 are: Nursing homes, mental institutions, TB sanitariums, convalescent homes, homes for the aged and so forth.
 - b The length of time a person may have been a patient in a place of this type does not affect its inclusion as a "stay" to be recorded in question 29, as long as the person is a household member at the time of interview.
- 2 Question 29 is a family style question. If the answer is "No," circle "N" in 29a and go to question 30. If the answer is "Yes," ask question 29b. Circle "Y" for the person(s) for whom the "stay" was reported in the appropriate column(s).
- 3 If one or more nursing home "stays" are reported, record the number in 29c, then go to the "HOSP." box in item C1. Correct the previous entry for this person and enter the total number of hospital and nursing home "stays" reported in 28 and 29.

Ask for each child 1 year old or under if date of birth is on or after reference date.		
30a. Was -- born in a hospital? If "Yes," and no hospitalizations entered in his and/or mother's column, enter "1" in 28b and item C. If "Yes," and a hospitalization is entered for the mother and/or baby, ask 30b for each.	30a.	Y . . . N (NP) ---
30b. Is this hospitalization included in the number you gave me for -- ? If "No," correct entries in Q. 28 and item C for mother and/or baby.	30b.	Y . . . N

1 Question 30 is a check on question 28 to insure that hospitalizations for deliveries or births are not forgotten. If no baby aged one or under is listed, make no entries in question 30 but go to question 31.

- a Question 30a - If a child under two years old is listed on the questionnaire, look at question 3 of the column in which the baby is listed. If the baby's birthdate is before the reference date, no further questions or entries for question 30 are required.

If the baby was born within the hospital reference period (on or after the date entered in C2 and before last Sunday (midnight)), ask question 30a. If the answer to this question is "Yes," check question 28b for both the baby and the mother to see if any hospitalizations have been reported. If no hospitalizations have been reported for either the baby or the mother, enter "1" in question 28b for both the baby and the mother. If a hospitalization has been reported for the mother but not the baby (or vice versa), enter "1" in question 28b for the baby and ask question 30b for the mother (or vice versa). If a hospitalization has been reported in question 28b for both the baby and the mother, then ask 30b for both the baby and the mother.

30 Check on Question 28 (Continued)

30

- b Question 30b - Ask and mark question 30b for the baby and the mother if any hospitalizations were reported in question 28b for either, and you have determined in answer to question 30a that the baby was born in a hospital within the reference period. If the answer to 30b is "No," change the entry in 28b to reflect this "missed" hospital stay.
- c Examples of Question 30 - Here are two examples which illustrate the procedure:
- 1) You are interviewing in January 1973. You have an 18-month old child listed on the questionnaire as a one-year old, with question 3, date of birth, as July 7, 1971, (the reference date for the hospital probe is December 1). Since the baby was not born within the time reference period, you do not need to make any entries in question 30.
 - 2) Or, for example, there is a baby listed as "Und. 1." The baby's birthdate is within the reference period so you ask question 30a, "Was the baby born in a hospital?" You find out that the baby was born in a hospital but see that no hospitalizations have been recorded in question 28b for the baby, but two hospitalizations have been recorded in question 28b for the mother. The instruction for 30a tells you to enter "1" in 28b and item C for the baby and ask question 30b for the mother to determine if the two hospitalizations already entered in 28b for her include her hospitalization for the baby's delivery. You find that it does not, so change the "2" hospitalizations already recorded in question 28b and in item C for the mother to "3."
- d In filling this question, remember that question 30a refers only to the baby and the entries should appear only in his column of the questionnaire. For question 30b, the entries can apply either to the mother or the baby or both, depending on whether either or both had a hospitalization reported in question 28b.

Question 31, Condition List

<p>31a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) have -</p> <p>If "Yes," ask b and c</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have . . . ?</p>	A. Goiter or other thyroid trouble?		Glandular disorder
	B. Diabetes?		
	C. Cystic fibrosis?		
	D. Anemia?		
	E. Epilepsy?		
	F. Multiple sclerosis?		
	G. Migraine?		
<p>31a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family have -</p> <p>If "Yes," ask b and c</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter in item C</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have . . . ?</p>	H. Neuralgia or neuritis		Condition affecting the nervous system
	I. Sciatica?		
	J. Nephritis?		Genito-urinary condition
	K. Kidney stones?		
	L. Any other kidney trouble?		
	M. Bladder trouble?		
	N. Prostate trouble?		
	O. Disease of the uterus or ovary?		
P. Any other female trouble?			

1. Question 31 consists of reading a list of selected conditions. Ask question 31 once for a family after completing question 30 for all required household members. If you are questioned as to the meaning of the terms in question 31, there are definitions printed next to several conditions for your use. For the others, say "I don't know."
 - a. Ask question 31, "During the past 12 months, did anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) have . . .?" and read the first listed condition. Insert the names or relationships of all family members in the parentheses.
 - b. Emphasis is placed on "During the past 12 months." Record all conditions reported while asking question 31 if it was present during the past 12 months. An additional probe may be necessary to determine this.
 - c. After reading each condition, wait for a "Yes" or "No" reply before going to the next condition. This procedure is necessary in order to be certain the respondent has had time to think about each condition. If two respondents are present, wait for each to reply to a condition before going on to the next one. As you ask each condition, make a checkmark (✓) in the column next to the condition to keep your place in the list.
 - d. When you receive a "Yes" response, ask question 31b, "Who was this?" Record the condition and letter in item C2 in the appropriate person's column.

31

Condition List (Continued)

31

Then ask 31c for the condition. For example, "During the past 12 months, did anyone else have diabetes?" When you receive a final "No" answer to that item, continue asking about the remaining conditions by reasking the main question, for example, "During the past 12 months, did anyone in the family have cystic fibrosis?" This is to remind the respondent that the remaining items refer to the entire family for the past 12 months.

- e When a "Yes" response is given to two or more conditions listed together, for example, neuralgia or neuritis, ask an additional probe at this time to determine the specific condition and enter this in C2.
 - f When a condition in question 31 has already been reported, enter the letter beside the condition in C2 and rephrase the question, for example, "During the past 12 months, besides your husband, did anyone in the family have anemia?"
 - g If the same condition is reported more than once in question 31, enter only the letter for the item where it was first reported. Thus, you will have only one letter per condition in item C2.
 - h A condition is not to be considered as a question 31 condition unless it is reported or listed in question 31. For example, if a person reports "Menopause" in answer to question 16 but says "No" to "Any other female trouble," do not consider menopause as a question 31 condition.
- 2 Record all conditions reported when asking question 31. In some cases respondents report conditions other than those you are asking about or conditions difficult to classify so that you may not know whether this response is really a "Yes" or "No" to your question. In such cases, enter the reported condition and letter in C2 (if it was present during the past 12 months) and reask the question. For example: In reply to "Nephritis" the respondent says, "Cystitis." Enter "Cystitis" in C2 and ask "During the past 12 months, did anyone in the family have nephritis?"
- 3 Conditions Given Out of Turn - If the respondent reports a listed condition before you have asked about it in the list, record it with the letter at which it is reported. For example, if you ask "Nephritis," and the reply is "I have kidney stones," record "kidney stones" and the letter "J" in item C2. When you come to "K - Kidney stones," ask, "During the past 12 months, besides yourself, did anyone in the family have kidney stones?"

32. Compared to other persons --'s age, would you say that his health is excellent, good, fair, or poor?	<div style="text-align: center;">1</div> 32 1 E 2 G 3 F 4 P
--	---

1. Question 32 is a general health question to determine the respondent's own evaluation of his and each member of his family's health as compared to other persons of the same age. If the respondent does not understand, reask the question emphasizing the phrase "Compared to other persons --'s age." Circle the appropriate response according to the respondent's reply.

(R)

Item R, Respondent

(R)

R Q.'s 4-32	For persons 17 years old or over, show who responded for (or was present during the asking of) Q.'s 4-32. If persons responded for self, show whether entirely or partly. For persons under 17 show who responded for them.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Responded for self-entirely 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Responded for self-partly Person _____ was respondent
-----------------------	---	---

- 1 Item R, Who Responded - Item R is used to identify the respondent for probe questions 4-32. Mark item R as follows:
 - a Adult - If the person responded to questions 4-32 entirely for himself, mark the box "Responded for self-entirely." Consider a person to have responded entirely for himself if he was present (in the same room or within hearing distance) during the asking of all of questions 4-32, even if he did not answer any questions directly.
 - 1) If he responded partly for himself, mark the box "Responded for self-partly" and enter the column number of the person who partly responded for him. Consider a person to have "Responded for self-partly" if he was present (in the same room or within hearing distance) during the asking of at least one, but not all of questions 4-32.
 - 2) For adults not present, enter the column number of the person or persons who responded for them.
 - 3) Persons 17 and 18 years of age may respond for themselves if they live alone or are in the presence of a related adult but unless they are married cannot answer any questions for other family members.
 - b Children - For unmarried persons under 17, enter in item R the column number of the person or persons who responded for them.
 - c Interpreter - When an interpreter is involved, consider the person(s) providing the information to the interpreter as the respondent.

CHAPTER 4. CONDITION PAGE

A General Procedure

Ask the questions on the Condition page separately for each condition recorded in item C2. If no Condition pages are required, leave these pages blank.

- 1 Each condition which requires a Condition page is entered in item C2.
- 2 If a condition requiring a Condition page is first reported late in the interview (after the Probe pages have been completed), enter it in item C2 at the time it is reported. Fill a Condition page for this new condition after you have completed the entire page on which it was reported, for example, after completing all required columns for hospitalizations, unless it is reported on a Condition page. In this case, fill a Condition page for it before completing Condition pages for the next person.

B Order of Filling Condition Pages

Fill the first Condition page for the first condition listed for Person 1. Continue consecutively, condition by condition, until each condition recorded in item C2 for Person 1 has been carried through a separate Condition page. Continue by carrying all of Person 2's conditions listed through separate Condition pages, then Person 3, etc., in the order the persons are listed.

- 1 Enter each condition number, which appears in the upper left-hand corner of the Condition page, in the box to the right of the condition in item C2. Do this when the condition is carried from item C2 to the Condition page.

C Extra Questionnaires Needed for More Than Seven Conditions

If there are more than seven conditions reported, use extra questionnaires and number the Condition pages consecutively. Thus, for more than seven conditions, the number of the first Condition page in the second questionnaire must be changed to eight.

D Types of Reporting Problems

The following paragraphs list some conditions that may cause problems:

- 1 Dental Conditions - If teeth were pulled or other dental surgery performed, record in question 3 the name of the disease or condition that necessitated the pulling of the teeth or surgery.

2 Pregnancy and Childbirth

- a Normal pregnancy is not considered as illness but if there are complications which caused restricted activity or medical attention in the past two weeks, the complication(s) (morning sickness, swollen ankles, etc.) should be recorded in question 3a.
- b Delivery or childbirth, even when normal, should be reported for the mother on the Condition page if it caused restricted activity, that is, bed, work or school loss, or cut-down days during the past two weeks. Date of onset for these cases should be the date of delivery.
 - 1) In recording a delivery, either state that it was normal or that there were complications. If there were complications, enter "delivery" and also a description of the complications in questions 3a through 3e on the Condition page. Do not record "pregnancy" if you mean "normal delivery" or "childbirth."
 - 2) Do not report birth during the past two weeks on a Condition page for the baby unless there were birth complications for the baby or the baby had some other illness. For such cases, enter the specific condition, not just "birth."

3 Menstruation and Menopause

- a Normal menstruation is not illness. However, if the respondent reports that menstruation has caused restricted activity or she saw a doctor for this condition during the past two weeks, it should be recorded, for example, excessive or slight "flow," delayed or painful menstruation, or frequent or irregular menstruation.
- b Any menopausal symptoms causing restricted activity, or a two-week doctor visit should also be recorded.

4 Illness Resulting From Vaccination or Immunization - Vaccination and immunization in themselves are not illnesses. However, they may cause temporary illness with such symptoms as fever, headaches, etc. Illness involving restricted activity or doctor visits in the past two weeks, resulting from vaccination or immunization, should be included as in the following example: "Fever and headache" in question 3a, "Smallpox vaccination" in question 3b. The questions on the Condition page would apply to "Fever and headache."

5 Mental Illness - If mental illness is reported by the respondent, try to get the medical name and record that in question 3a. If the medical name is not known, enter a description of how it affects the person.

6 Operations - If the only description the respondent gives of an illness is the name of an operation, ask what the condition was that made the operation necessary and record that condition in question 3a along with the operation. Also, record any present ill-effects. "Vasectomy" is on Card C and is an exception to this rule.

- 7 Reaction to Drugs - If the respondent reports a reaction to drugs taken causing illness with restricted activity or medical attention in the past two weeks, three things should be recorded in 3a: The reaction, the drug, and the reason for taking the drug. For example, "skin rash - penicillin - virus."
- 8 Caution about Deciding Two Conditions Are the Same - Do not attempt to "diagnose" conditions which appear to be the same or to make decisions that the two conditions are the same because they seem to be alike, for example, "deformed foot" and "club foot."
- a Do not probe to determine whether two conditions are the same. It is only when the respondent indicates they are the same by his answers to the questions or when the names of conditions are exactly identical, that you are to consider the two conditions as the same. Otherwise, record them separately in item C2 and carry each condition through a separate Condition page.
- b If the respondent actually says that one condition is the same as another for which you have already completed a Condition page, follow this procedure:
- 1) Leave, on the Condition pages, the separate entries for each condition reported, but enter a footnote on the two Condition pages that the conditions are the same. Refer to the conditions by number, for example, "Conditions 1 and 2 are the same."
 - 2) Since you will already have taken the first condition through all questions of a Condition page, you will usually not need to ask the remaining questions for any other condition which has been reported as being the same as the first one.

However, conditions listed or reported in question 31 require certain additional information, for example, questions 11-19, not required for conditions reported elsewhere. When you are asking about a condition listed or reported in question 31 and the respondent says that it is the same as a condition for which you have already completed a Condition page, be sure that on one of the pages you have asked all the questions appropriate for a condition reported in question 31. For example, if you have in item C2:

Question number 27 - Shortness of breath - 1

Question number A - Goiter - 2

When filling the Condition page for "goiter" the respondent says the two conditions are the same. You must complete item AA and questions 11-19 on this page before footnoting "Same as condition 1." The reason for this is that these questions are not required for "shortness of breath" but are required for "goiter" because it is a question 31 condition.

However, if the conditions had been reversed, that is, the goiter first, and the shortness of breath next, and the respondent says they are the same, then you would need no more information on the page for shortness of breath except the footnote that these conditions are the same.

E Questions 3a-e, Condition Details

- 1 For purposes of analysis, all illnesses and injuries reported must be translated into medical codes. Since the coding system in use provides for over 1,500 different conditions, it is desirable that the descriptions of the conditions be as complete and detailed as possible. Questions 3a-e are designed to obtain this needed information.
- 2 The best description of a condition is its exact medical title. Sometimes the statements of respondents do not always give a complete description of the condition. When the respondent does not know the exact medical title of the illness, one or more of three different kinds of information generally needs to be obtained in order to assign the most exact medical code:
 - a The respondent's statement of the cause.
 - b A specific description of the kind of trouble.
 - c The part of the body affected.
- 3 Ask questions 3b-3e about the entries in question 3.
- 4 If any needed entries for 3b-3e have been recorded previously in question 3, it is not necessary to reask the question or reenter the answer.

F If More Than One Condition is Given in Item 1 and Question 3

If in item 1 or question 3 there is more than one condition which is listed or reported in question 3l, each requires a separate Condition page unless the respondent volunteers that these conditions are the same. Do not attempt to "diagnose" conditions which appear to be the same or to make decisions that the two conditions are the same because they seem to be alike, for example, "overactive thyroid" and "goiter." If the second condition is listed or reported in question 3l, determine if it was present during the past 12 months and complete a separate Condition page for it if it was present.

- 1 Carry the first condition through the remainder of the Condition page. Enter the second condition in item C2 at the time it is reported so that a Condition page will be filled for it before starting the Condition pages for the next person. If the second condition was from question 3l and was not present during the past 12 months (and thus does not require a Condition page), indicate this fact in a footnote on the Condition page for the first condition, as in the following example:

Question A and item 1 - Thyroid trouble

Question 3a - Underactive thyroid

Question 3b - Goiter 1/

Footnote entry - 1/ Goiter removed two years ago.

- 2 Also complete separate Condition pages when question 3a contains more than one condition. For example:

Question 27 and item 1 - Foot trouble

Question 3a - Corns and calluses

a Carry the first condition through the remainder of this Condition page. Enter the second condition in item C2 at the time it is reported so that a page will be filled for it before starting the Condition pages for the next person. Enter "corns" in 3a and "callus" in C2 with "Cond." as the source.

- 3 Do not attempt to determine if a reported condition is the same as one listed in the condition lists. For example:

Item 1 - Prostate trouble

Question 3a - Prostatitis

In this case do not consider "prostatitis" as a question 3l condition (M) unless it was reported while asking the condition list.

G Questions 4-8, Restricted Activity Past Two Weeks

The purpose of these questions is to separate the conditions causing persons to cut down on their usual activities for as much as a day, from those conditions not affecting usual activities. Ask questions 4-8 for each condition without regard to the answers to probe questions 4-8 on page 2.

- 1 Refer the respondent to the calendar card for questions 4-8 as often as necessary, since these questions refer to the past two weeks.
- 2 For injuries occurring less than three months ago, questions 4-8 refer to the injury itself and/or any ill-effects which were present during "the past two weeks." For injuries occurring more than three months ago, questions 4-8 refer to the present effects.
- 3 In Bed or in a Hospital - If a person is sick in bed or the hospital (because of the condition you are asking about), always count him as cutting down on the things he usually does. This includes a chronic invalid who might spend all of his time in bed because of the condition you are asking about.

- 4 Check for Number of Days Reported in Questions 7 and 8 - Since hardly anyone works seven days a week or goes to school seven days a week, follow up replies of "the whole two weeks," "all last week," etc. Do not enter "14" or "7" automatically but reask the question in order to find out the actual number of days lost from work or school. If a person actually lost 14 days from work or school during "the past two weeks," enter "14" but explain in a footnote that these days were actually lost.
- 5 Check Between Questions 5, 6, 7, and 8 - The number of days entered in question 5 (cut-down days) must be equal to or greater than the number of days entered in any one of questions 6, 7, or 8, since days in bed or days lost from school or work represent "cutting down on usual activities." If there are inconsistencies of this kind, ask additional questions to ascertain the correct number to be recorded.
- 6 Differences Between Restricted Activity Days in Probe Questions 4-8 and on the Condition Page - It is possible that the total number of days reported for all conditions will be greater than the number of days reported in probe questions 4-8 on pages 2 and 3, since the person on any given day can cut down or be in bed for more than one condition. Such entries may or may not be consistent. Therefore, do not compare the entries in probe questions 4-8 on pages 2 and 3 and the entries in questions 4-8 on the Condition page. Accept what the respondent reports.

H Questions 20-24, Accidents and Injuries

Questions 20-24 obtain information about ALL accidents or injuries which are recorded on a Condition page.

- 1 Multiple injuries, reported in question 21a, resulting from a single accident, should be reported together in the same set of accident questions on a single Condition page.
- 2 Each separate accident requires a separate Condition page unless the same condition was caused by more than one accident, all of which occurred three months or more ago. In this case, fill the accident questions for the most recent accident and give the date(s) (month and year) of the other accident(s) in a footnote.
- 3 If a condition is caused by an accident that happened more than three months ago, and a later accident (less than three months ago) aggravated this condition, an additional Condition page is required. One Condition page will pertain to the three months plus accident and the other to the one that happened less than three months ago. Enter the other injury in item C2 so that there are entries in C2 to correspond to the two Condition pages.
- 4 If two or more present effects reported in 21b are the results of the same accident, each requires a separate Condition page. In these cases, you may enter "Same accident as condition _____," in questions 20-24. Fill a Condition page for each present effect in the same order as they are listed in question 21b.
 - a When such additional conditions requiring Condition pages are reported, enter them in item C2 at the time they are reported.

①

Item 1, Person Number and Name of Condition

①

1. Person number	Name of condition

- 1 Transcribe the entries for item 1 to the Condition page before you ask question 2.
 - a Person Number - Write in the number of the person who has the condition for which the particular Condition page is being filled.
 - b Name of Condition - Transcribe the "Name of condition" verbatim as listed in item C2.

2

Question 2, When Last Saw or Talked to Doctor

2

When did -- last see or talk to a doctor about his ...?		
<input type="checkbox"/> In interview week (Reask 2)	<input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 wks. (Item C)	<input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 yrs.
<input type="checkbox"/> 2 wks. - 6 mos.	<input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos.	<input type="checkbox"/> 5 yrs.
<input type="checkbox"/> 1 yr.		<input type="checkbox"/> Never
		<input type="checkbox"/> DK if Dr. seen
		<input type="checkbox"/> DK when

1 Ask question 2 for each condition listed in item 1. In asking the question, substitute the name or relationship of the person for the dashes, and the name of the condition for the three dots. For children, change the question to "When did anyone last see or talk to a doctor about --'s (your daughter Jane's, your son John's) ...?"

a Doctor Seen or Talked to

- 1) A visit by the person to the doctor.
- 2) A visit by the doctor to the person. If the doctor visits the household to see one patient and while there examines or visits professionally another member of the household, count this visit as "doctor seen or talked to" for each individual for each condition receiving the doctor's attention.
- 3) Telephone calls to or from a doctor (except requests for appointments or inquiries about a bill), visits to a doctor's office, a clinic, a medical center or a hospital (either as an inpatient or an outpatient) where a person goes for treatment or examination ordered by a doctor but where he may not actually see or talk to a doctor. Also, to be included as visits are calls to the doctor concerning the obtaining or renewal of a prescription.
- 4) The case in which the person who had the condition is himself a doctor and he followed his own treatment or advice.
- 5) Talking to a family member who is a doctor.

②

When Last Saw or Talked to Doctor (Continued)

②

b Type of Doctor

- 1) The term "doctor" covers only medical doctors(MD) and osteopathic physicians(DO). Include all visits to medical doctors regardless of whether they are general practitioners or specialists. Ophthalmologists (occulists) have an MD degree and are counted as medical specialists. Also, include dentists (for dental conditions.)
 - 2) Consulting chiropractors, chiropodists, podiatrists, naturōpaths, Christian Science healers, opticians, optometrists or other types of people giving medical care are not counted.
 - 3) Do not make a special inquiry about the kind of doctor consulted or tell the respondent the survey definition of who is considered a doctor. If the respondent volunteers he saw a chiropractor, rephrase the question and ask "When did you last see or talk to a medical doctor?"
- 2 For conditions which usually last a long time, such as, heart trouble, high blood pressure, hay fever, arteriosclerosis, arthritis, a person might not consult a doctor every time he experiences an occurrence (attack) of the trouble. Question 2 refers to the last time a doctor was seen or talked to for that condition since it first started.
- 3 For conditions which usually last a short time, and which a person may have repeatedly, such as, colds, virus, flu, injuries occurring less than three months ago (that did not result in obvious permanent disability), etc., question 2 refers to the last time a doctor was talked to about this particular episode. Question 2 does not refer to the time he talked to a doctor about previous attacks of colds, virus or other similar short-term conditions.

- 4 Mark the answer box for question 2 of each Condition page as follows:

In Interview week - The respondent reports seeing a doctor during interview week. Rephrase question 2 to determine when a doctor was last seen at any time other than interview week for this condition. Do not change the original entry but mark the appropriate box for the new response. Thus, if "In interview week" is marked, you will also have another answer box marked. As a result of this "Never" may be marked, meaning a doctor was never seen before interview week.

Past 2 wks. - The respondent reports seeing a doctor during the two-week reference period. Look at the "DOCTOR" box in item C1 to determine if any doctor visits were reported for this person. If no doctor visits were recorded, enter "1" for this person in item C1. If there are doctor visits recorded, make no correction in C1. If you learn the visit was to a dentist, or while the person was an inpatient in the hospital, enter a footnote to this effect, but do not make any entry in C1.

2 wks.—6 mos. - The person's last doctor visit was before the two-week reference period but within the six-month period.

Over 6—12 mos. - The person's last doctor visit was between six and twelve months ago.

1 yr. - The person's last doctor visit was 12 or more months ago but less than two years ago.

2—4 years - The person's last doctor visit was two or more years ago but less than five years ago.

5+ years - The person's last doctor visit was five or more years ago.

Never - The respondent reports never having seen a doctor prior to interview week or reports seeing someone not counted as a medical doctor.

DK if Dr. seen - The respondent does not know if a doctor was ever seen for this condition.

DK when Dr. seen - The respondent cannot give an estimate as to when a doctor was seen for this condition.

A1

Interviewer Check Item A1

A1

A1	Examine "Name of condition" entry and mark		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident or injury (A2)	<input type="checkbox"/> On Card C (A2)	<input type="checkbox"/> Neither (3a)

- 1) Fill interviewer check item A1 immediately after recording the answer to question 2. Examine the "Name of condition" entry in item 1, then mark one of the three boxes.
 - a) "Accident or Injury" - If the "Name of condition" entry in item 1 indicates that an accident or injury was involved, mark this box and go to item A2.
 - 1) Accidents and Injuries - Accidents may occur with or without a resulting injury. For purposes of this survey, we are not interested in accidents in which there was no injury involved, unless reported in probe question 10.
 - a) Difference Between "Accidents" and "Injuries" - The terms "accident" and "injury" may be used interchangeably. There are cases, however, when an injury may occur when an accident is not involved, for example, a war injury, a shooting, a stabbing, etc.
 - b) Injuries - There are many kinds of injuries, such as, cuts, bruises, burns, sprains, fractures, etc. "Insect stings," "animal bites," "sunburn," "sun poisoning," "heat or sun strokes," "blisters," "frostbite," "frozen feet," etc., are also considered as injuries.

- c) Poisonings - Illnesses resulting from swallowing, drinking, breathing or coming in contact with some poisonous substance or gas are also counted as injuries. Poisoning may also occur from an overdose of substance that is nonpoisonous when taken in normal doses.

Exclude conditions which are diseases or illnesses not classified as injuries, for example, "poison oak," "poison ivy," "ptomaine or food poisoning."

2) Caution Regarding Accidents and Injuries

- a) Do not mark the "Accident or injury" box for birth injuries to either the mother or the child. However, make sure that the injury occurred during the act of delivery, not later. For injuries occurring after birth do mark this box.
- b) A condition, such as "broken (perforated) (ruptured) eardrum" may be caused by an accident or injury or may be due to some other cause, such as childhood disease. Always ask what caused the broken eardrum or other such conditions.
- c) If the respondent does not know whether a condition was caused by an accident or injury, or cannot recall such an occurrence when an accident is indicated, do not mark this box. Explain the circumstances in a footnote, such as "Doctor says probably caused by blow on head but respondent cannot recall such an occurrence happening."
- d) Exposure to heavy lifting, loud noise, and other similar hazards are considered injuries only when they are one-time occurrences. For example, a punctured eardrum resulting from a loud explosion would be considered an injury, but continued exposure to loud noises at work resulting in partial deafness would not be considered an injury. For the latter case, do not mark this box, but indicate that the condition was caused by continued exposure to loud noises at work. Follow the same procedure if the cause is continued heavy lifting, continued strain, etc.

A1

Interviewer Check Item, A1 (Continued)

A1

- c "On Card C" - If the condition is not an injury and was not obviously caused by an accident, refer to Card C of the flashcard booklet to see if the condition is listed there. If it is listed, mark this box and go to item A2.
- 1) Names of illnesses given by respondents are often sufficient to permit medical coding without further probing. This is true of the specified conditions listed on Card C and so it is not necessary to ask question 3a-e for these conditions. However, Card C is an exclusive list. Do not apply the Card C rule to conditions which you feel are synonyms of the listed conditions.
- a) For example, "hernia (all types)" is on Card C, while "rupture" is not; mark the "Neither" box and ask question 3a-e, as applicable, for "rupture" but mark the "On Card C" box for "hernia." "Stomach ulcer," "duodenal ulcer," "gastric ulcer," and "peptic ulcer" are on Card C while "ulcer(s)" (unspecified) is not. If you are in doubt, consider the condition not to be on Card C.
- b) If the respondent volunteers the information that a Card C condition was caused by an accident, for example, bursitis caused by an accident, mark the "On Card C" box. In these cases mark the "Accident or injury" box in item A5 before going to item A2 so you will not forget to fill the accident questions.
- d "Neither" - If the "Name of condition" entry in item 1 does not involve an accident or injury and is not a condition on Card C, mark this box and go to question 3a.

3a

Question 3a, Name of Condition

3a

If "Doctor not talked to," record adequate description of condition.
If "Doctor talked to," ask:
3a. What did the doctor say it was? - Did he give it a medical name?

- 1 Ask question 3a, when a doctor has been talked to about an illness, even if the only time a doctor was seen was during interview week and the "Never" box is marked in question 2. Also, ask question 3a if question 2 is marked "Never" but the person reported seeing a non-medical doctor, such as a chiropractor.
 - a If a doctor was not talked to about an illness condition, do not ask 3a but instead transcribe to question 3a the item 1 entry "Name of condition."
- 2 Enter whatever the respondent tells you the doctor said, using the respondent's own words. If the medical name given by the respondent is one which is unfamiliar to you, ask him to spell it for you. If the exact spelling is not known, record it phonetically but also ask the respondent to describe how it affects him and record a description of the condition. In all cases, remember that the entry in question 3a should be exact and as complete as possible. Therefore, if the respondent does not know the "medical name" or if his answer is vague, for example, "It's my liver," "I've got a bad heart," "Something I ate," "Some kind of ailment," do not accept it. Instead, ask the person to describe the condition further, for example, "What's wrong with your liver?", "In what way is your heart bad?", "How does this food affect you?", "What kind of ailment do you have?"
 - a It is permissible to copy the "Name of condition" entry to question 3a if that entry is clearer and more complete than the respondent's final answer to question 3a or he says he does not know what the doctor said it was.
 - b Question 3a should never be left blank or have an entry of "DK" when the "Neither" box has been marked in item A1.
 - c If in answer to question 3a (or a later part of question 3) a Card C condition is reported, complete the remaining parts of question 3 according to the instructions for each part.

3b

Question 3b, Cause of Condition

3b

Do not ask for Cancer
b. What was the cause of . . . ?
 Accident or injury (A2)

- 1 Ask question 3b for all conditions except cancer. Enter the respondent's answer verbatim.
- 2 If cause has already been reported and recorded in question 3a, there is no need to reask the cause or enter it again in question 3b. If the cause was given in answer to question 3a but was not recorded there, enter the cause in question 3b without reasking the question. For example, a reply of "Overwork caused a strain on my heart," could be recorded verbatim in 3a or as "strained heart" in 3a and "overwork" in 3b. No further questions or entry about the cause would be necessary in either case.

Question 3c, Kind of Trouble

If the entry in 3a or 3b includes the words:			
Ailment	Condition	Disorder	Trouble
Anemia	Cyst	Growth	Tumor
Asthma	Defect	Measles	Ulcer
Attack	Disease	Rupture	
			} Ask c:
c. What kind of . . . is it?			

- 1 Ask question 3c if any of the terms listed above this question appear in 3a or b and the required information has not been given previously.
 - a If the respondent's first answer indicates that he does not understand what information is desired, reask question 3c, emphasizing the word "kind." If the respondent does not know the specific kind, record what he does say about it or enter "DK."
- 2 With respect to the medical coding requirements for certain illness conditions, the entries in question 3a or 3b do not always show the exact kind of condition the person has. For example, "heart trouble," "kidney trouble" and "stomach disorder" are all general terms which give a specific part or organ of the body but not a specific kind of illness or trouble. Thus, heart trouble might be of several different kinds—angina, coronary, rheumatic heart, heart leakage, etc.; kidney trouble could mean kidney stones, nephritis, bladder infection, etc.; stomach trouble could refer to any number of digestive disturbances, such as stomach ulcers, appendicitis, intestinal flu, etc. In question 3c, we want to give the respondent an opportunity to provide more specific information if he knows it.

3c

Kind of Trouble (Continued)

3c

- 3 One of the terms listed for which 3c (kind) is asked is "measles." The reason for this is to distinguish between rubeola (regular measles) and rubella (German measles). The following terms are considered adequate to make this distinction:

Regular measles

German measles

Rubeola

Rubella

"8 day" measles

"3 day" measles

"Old fashioned" measles

"Black" measles

"Hard" measles

"Bad" measles

"Red" measles

If "measles" is given as the cause of a condition, for example, deafness due to measles, and the respondent does not know the kind, ask additional questions to determine if the measles were present during the mother's pregnancy, or if the person who has the condition is the one who had the measles.

- 4 For "cyst," "tumor," or other "growths," we want to determine if the cyst, etc., was cancerous (malignant) or noncancerous (benign). However, do not specifically ask if it was cancerous or noncancerous. For example, for "ovarian cyst" ask: "What kind of ovarian cyst is it?" (or "was it?" if the cyst has been removed). Also, ask kind for such entries as "skin growth," "flesh tumor" and "bone cyst" which describe only the site or part of body.

For allergy or stroke, ask:
d. How does the allergy (stroke) affect him?

- 1 When "allergy" or "stroke" has been reported in question 3a, 3b, or 3c, ask question 3d inserting the appropriate word for the condition about which you are asking:

"How does the allergy affect him?"

or

"How does the stroke affect him?"

If the effect of the "allergy" or "stroke" has already been given in questions 3a-3c, question 3d need not be asked.

- 2 Enter the manifestations. For example, in the case of an allergy the person may have been affected with a swelling in some part of the body, a breaking out or itching, sneezing, eyes watering, nasal trouble, difficulty breathing, etc.
- 3 For a stroke, the manifestation might be "nervous tic on left side of face," "entire right leg and arm paralyzed," "speech difficulty," etc. Note that for a stroke, the information needed is how the person is affected now, not necessarily how he was affected at the time of the stroke. An entry giving only the part of body affected, for example, left side, is inadequate since we need to know how the person is affected.

3e

Question 3e, Part of Body Affected

3e

For an impairment or any of the following entries:		
Abscess	Damage	Paralysis
Ache (except headache)	Growth	Rupture
Bleeding	Hemorrhage	Sore
Blood clot	Infection	Soreness
Bull	Inflammation	Tumor
Cancer	Neuralgia	Ulcer
Cramps (except menstrual)	Neuritis	Varicose veins
Cyst	Pain	Weak
	Palsy	Weakness

e. What part of the body is affected?

Show the following detail:

Head	skull, scalp, face
Back/spine/vertebra	upper, middle, lower
Ear or eye	one or both
Arm	one or both; shoulder, upper, elbow, lower, wrist, hand
Leg	one or both; hip, upper, knee, lower, ankle, foot

- 1 Ask question 3e when any entry in questions 3a-d indicates an impairment listed in paragraph 2 below, or is one of the conditions listed above this question. Phrase the question to obtain the needed information, for example, "Does your deafness affect one or both ears?" or "What part of the back is affected?"
- 2 Impairments for which question 3e must be asked:
 - Deafness, trouble hearing, or any other ear condition.
 - Blindness, trouble seeing, or any other eye condition.
 - Missing hand or arm - all or part of, foot or leg - all or part of.
 - Trouble, stiffness or any deformity of foot, leg, fingers, arm or back.

- 3 For the impairments and conditions listed which affect the "eye," "head," "back," "spine," "vertebra," "arm," or "leg," question 3 must show the specific detail that is required as given below question 3e.
- a There are other detailed entries besides those listed which are acceptable, for example, "finger," "toe," "arch," "neck," etc. If an entire arm or leg is affected, state that this is so by entries, such as "one entire arm" or "one whole leg;" do not simply enter "arm" or "leg."
- b If the part of the body affected is the eye or ear, or any part of the arm or leg, ask whether one or both are affected. The use of the singular or plural is acceptable except in those cases where the use of the singular or plural does not show specifically whether one or both are affected. For example, in the case of "trouble seeing" or "deafness" an entry of "one" or "both" (eyes or ears) must be made.

A2

Interviewer Check Item A2

A2

A2	The remaining questions will be asked as appropriate for the condition entered in:		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Item 1	<input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3b	<input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3d
	<input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3a	<input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3c	

1 Mark one of the boxes in item A2 to indicate the condition that questions 4-19 are asked about.

a If "Accident or injury" or "On Card C" is marked in item A1, question 3 is not required. Ask questions 4-19 about the entry in item 1. For example:

Question 27 and item 1 - Bursitis - Mark the "Item 1" box.

b If the same condition is given in item 1 and question 3a, mark the "Q. 3a" box. For example:

Question 16 and item 1 - Allergy

Question 3a - Allergy

Question 3b - Dust

c If different conditions are given in item 1 and question 3, a determination must be made as to which of these is the condition to which questions 4-19 apply. This might occur when one condition is a medical name and the other a description; or two medical names; or one condition is the cause of another.

Use the following rules when there is more than one condition in item 1 and question 3 to determine which box to mark in item A2:

1) If neither condition is listed or reported in question 31, ask questions 4-19 about the entry in question 3a. For example:

Interviewer Check Item A2 (Continued)

Question 9 and item 1 - Curvature of spine

Question 3a - Arthritis

Question 3b - DK

} Mark the
"Q. 3a"
box

- 2) If one of the conditions is listed or reported in question 31 and the other is not, ask questions 4-19 about the condition from question 31. For example:

Question D and item 1 - Anemia

Question 3a - Vitamin deficiency

Question 3b - Lack of iron

} Mark the
"Item 1"
box

or

Question O and item 1 - Female trouble

Question 3a - Menopause

Question 3b - Age

} Mark the
"Item 1"
box

or

Question 27 and item 1 - Kidney infection

Question 3a - Kidney stones

Question 3b - Diet

} Mark the
"Q. 3a"
box

or

Question 9 and item 1 - Headaches

Question 3a - Nerves

Question 3b - Migraine

} Mark the
"Q. 3b"
box

- 3) If both conditions are listed or reported in question 31, and present during the past 12 months, complete a Condition page for the first condition reported. Then complete a separate Condition page for the second condition. For example:

First Condition page

Question A and item 1 - Overactive thyroid

Question 3a - Goiter

Question 3b - Overactive gland

} Mark the
"Item 1"
box

A2

Interviewer Check Item A2 (Continued)

Second Condition page

Question A and item 1 - Goiter

Question 3a - Overactive gland

Question 3b - DK

}
Mark the
"Item 1"
box

- 4) Do not consider a condition as a question 31 condition unless it is listed or reported while asking the condition list even though it may be similar to one listed. For example:

Question A and item 1 - Thyroid trouble

Question 3a - Removed most of thyroid

Question 3b - Underactive thyroid

}
Mark the
"Item 1"
box

In this case only one Condition page is required for "thyroid trouble."

- 5) For old conditions which the person no longer has, ask questions 4-19 about the present effects. For example:

Question 27 and item 1 - Stroke

Question 3a - Stroke

Question 3b - High blood pressure

Question 3d - Paralyzed entire arm

}
Mark the
"Q. 3d"
box

Question 4, Restricted Activity, Past Two Weeks

4. During the past 2 weeks, did his . . . cause him to cut down on the things he usually does?	1 Y 2 N (9)
--	------------------

1 In asking question 4, insert the name of the condition or the injury you are asking about. If the name of the condition is too long or too difficult to pronounce, you may shorten it or refer to it, for example, as your "hip condition" or "your husband's eye injury," and so on; but this may be done only if the respondent clearly understands what condition or injury you are talking about.

a Things He Usually Does - The things a person usually does are the person's "usual activities." For school children and most adults, "usual activities" would be going to school, working, or keeping house, etc. For children under school age, "usual activities" depend upon whatever the usual pattern is for the child which will, in turn, be affected by the age of the child, weather conditions, etc. For retired or elderly persons, "usual activities" might consist of almost no activity, but cutting down on even a small amount would mean that a person should answer "Yes" to the question.

On Sundays or holidays "usual activities" should be interpreted as the things the person usually does on such days, going to church, playing golf, visiting friends or relatives, staying at home and listening to the radio, reading, looking at television, etc.

1) The following examples illustrate cases of persons cutting down on the things they usually do because of illness or injury; a person in school was kept away from school; a person who worked away from home was kept away from work; a farmer or a housewife was kept from caring for the farm or the home either completely or had to cut out all but the essential chores; an elderly person who normally takes a daily walk in the park was kept from doing so.

④

Restricted Activity, Past 2 Weeks (Continued)

④

- 2) In borderline cases, where "usual activity" is difficult to determine, accept the respondent's view of what he himself considers to be his "usual activities." For example, a man with a heart condition may still consider his "usual activity" to be "working" even though the heart condition has prevented him from working for a year or more. You should accept his statement that "working" is his "usual activity." In another example, a man may say that a heart attack six months ago forced him to retire from his job or business, he does not expect to return to work, and considers his present "usual activities" to include only those associated with his retirement. The question, then, would refer to those activities.

Question 5, Days Cut Down in Past Two Weeks

5. During that period, how many days did he cut down for as much as a day?	_____ Days or <input type="checkbox"/> None (9)
--	--

1 Ask question 5 if a "Yes" answer was given to question 4. Enter the total number of different days during last week or the week before on which the condition caused the person to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day. The days need not be consecutive.

a Cut Down as Much as a Day - A day of restricted activity (cut down) is a day when a person cuts down on his usual activities for the whole of that day on account of an illness or injury. "Usual activities" for any day mean the things that the person would usually do on that day.

1) Restricted activity does not imply complete inactivity but it does imply the minimum of the things a person usually does. A special nap for an hour after lunch does not constitute cutting down on usual activities for as much as a day, nor does the elimination of a heavy chore, such as cleaning ashes out of the furnace or hanging out the wash. All or most of a person's usual activities for the day must have been restricted for the person to have a cut down day.

2) The following are some examples of a person having to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day:

A housewife who expected to clean house after doing the breakfast dishes, then work in the garden and go shopping in the afternoon was forced to rest because of a severe headache, doing nothing after the breakfast dishes until she prepared the evening meal.

A young boy who usually played outside most of the day was confined to the house because of a severe cold.

A garage owner whose usual activities included mechanical and other heavy work was forced to stay in his office directing others, talking to customers, etc., because of his heart condition.

⑤ Days Cut Down in Past Two Weeks (Continued)

⑤

- 2 The reference period for question 5 includes Saturdays and Sundays. ALL the days of the week are of equal importance in this question, even though the types of activities which were cut down might not be the same on weekends as on regular weekdays. If necessary, mention this to the respondent. To illustrate this concept, consider the following example:

A man who planned a fishing trip for Saturday and Sunday had to stay home from work Friday and was also too ill to go fishing both on Saturday and Sunday because of a flare-up of his back trouble. Assuming that this is the only time during the past two weeks in which he was bothered by back trouble, the correct entry for question 5 would be "3."

6

Question 6, Bed Days in Past Two Weeks

6

6. During that 2-week period, how many days did his . . . keep him in bed all or most of the day?	— Days oo <input type="checkbox"/> None
---	--

- 1 Do not leave this question blank if "Days" have been entered in question 5.
 - a Day in Bed - Any day on which the person was kept in bed either all or most of the day because of illness or injury. All or most of the day is defined as more than half of the daylight hours (or of the hours that the person is usually awake, if he works a night shift). Taking a nap on "general principles" should not be counted as a day in bed. Also, count all days as a patient in a hospital, sanitarium or nursing home as bed days whether or not the patient was actually lying in bed at the hospital, sanitarium or nursing home. Exclude hospital days for a normal newborn, unless the baby had some complication or illness.
 - b Bed - Anything used for sleeping, including sofa, cot or mattress. If a person was on the sofa watching TV because he was too ill to get around, he would be "in bed." The important distinction here is, whether the person was ill enough that he had to be in bed for all or most of the day.

7

Question 7, Days Lost From Work for Persons

7

17 Years of Age or Older

Ask if 17+ years:	
7. How many days did his . . . keep him from work during that 2-week period? (For females): not counting work around the house?	____ Days (9) or <input type="checkbox"/> None (9)

- 1 Ask question 7 if there are "Days" entered in 5 and the person is 17 years old or over. Use the alternate version of the question for females. Mark the "None" box if no days were lost from work or if the person doesn't work. If you learn that the person would not have been working during the past two weeks, whether he had been sick or well, mark the "None" box without asking the question for any other conditions for which question 7 requires an entry.
 - a Work - Paid work as an employee for someone else for wages, salary, commission or pay "in kind" (meals, living quarters, or supplies provided in place of cash wages). Also, include work in the person's own business, professional practice or farm and work without pay in a business or farm run by a related household member.

Exclude work around the house, volunteer unpaid work, such as for church, Red Cross, or charity, and service in the Armed Forces.
 - b Work-Loss Day - Any scheduled work day in which the person stayed home from work for all or most of the day because of the condition being inquired about. All or most of the day is defined as more than half of the hours usually spent at work.
 - c Disregard School Days - If a person 17 years of age or over goes to school instead of, or in addition to, working, record only the days lost from work (disregarding any days lost from school). Any days lost from school for persons 17 and over should be included in days of restricted activity (question 5).

6-16 Years

Ask if 6-16 years:	
8. How many days did his . . . keep him from school during that 2-week period?	<input type="text"/> Days <input type="checkbox"/> None

- 1 Ask question 8 if you have "Days" entered in question 5 and the person is 6-16 years old. Mark the "None" box if no days were lost from school or if the person does not go to school and is between the ages of 6-16 inclusive. Once you have learned that the person would not have been going to school during that period whether he had been sick or well, mark the "None" box without asking the question for any other conditions for which question 8 requires an entry.
 - a School-Loss Day - Any scheduled school day in which the person stayed home from school all or most of the day because of the condition being asked about. All or most of the day is defined as more than half of the hours which the school is usually in session. For example, if the youngster did not go to school until after lunch, this would count as a day lost from school. However, if he had missed only an hour or two, this would not count as a day lost from school.

If the youngster's regular school day is only a half day and that amount of time or most of it was lost from school on account of illness, it should be counted as a day lost from school.
 - b School Vacation - Ask this question even during the periods of the year which might normally be considered vacation periods, since school vacation periods are not all the same.
 - c Disregard Work Days - If a youngster 6-16 years of age works instead of, or in addition to, going to school, record only the days lost from school (disregarding any days lost from work). Any days lost from work for persons 6-16 years of age should be included in days of restricted activity (question 5).

9

Question 9, Onset of Condition

9

9. When did -- first notice his ...?	
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Last week	4 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 weeks - 3 months
2 <input type="checkbox"/> Week before	5 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 3-12 months
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 weeks - DK which	6 <input type="checkbox"/> More than 12 months ago
(Was it during the past 12 months or before that time?)	
(Was it during the past 3 months or before that time?)	
(Was it during the past 2 weeks or before that time?)	

- 1 Ask question 9 to determine when the condition began. If the respondent seems uncertain of the date of onset, ask the first probe "Was it during the past 12 months or before that time?" Ask the additional probe questions as necessary in order to mark the appropriate box. If the answer has been given in response to a previous questions, mark the appropriate box without asking question 9.

a First Noticed - When a condition first began to give any trouble or show any symptoms.

- 1) For the aftereffects of an old injury (one which happened more than three months ago), it is the date when the present ill-effects were first noticed.
- 2) For a condition that has continued for a long time, as might be the case with deafness, mental retardation, or stomach ulcer, the date might be many years ago. Some conditions, which a person has all of the time, manifest themselves in more serious ways from time to time. It is the date the trouble was first noticed, not the date of the most recent attack or flare-up.
- 3) For conditions which usually last a short time, such as colds, virus, flu, etc., but occur frequently, it is the date of the most recent attack.

- 4) For delivery or child birth, the onset is the same as the date of delivery.

2 Reference Period

Past 2 Weeks - The 2 weeks ending the Sunday night before the interview.

Past 3 Months - The 3 months ending the Sunday night before the interview beginning with that Sunday's date 3 months earlier.

Past 12 Months - The 12 months ending the Sunday night before the interview, and beginning with that Sunday's date a year earlier.

A3

Interviewer Check Item A3

A3

A3	<input type="checkbox"/> Not an eye cond. (A4)	<input type="checkbox"/> First eye cond. (6+ yrs.) (10)
	<input type="checkbox"/> First eye condition (under 6) (A4)	<input type="checkbox"/> Not first eye cond. (A4)

- 1 There must be an entry in one of the four boxes in item A3 for each Condition page being completed. An eye condition is any condition concerning the eyes or vision, such as, watery or weak eyes (except as effects of allergy), conjunctivitis, cataracts, glaucoma, etc. Ask the respondent if the condition is an eye condition if you do not know or are not sure.
- a "Not an eye cond." - Mark this box for each condition which is not an eye condition.
- b "First eye condition (under 6)" - Mark this box if the person is under six years old and this is the first or only eye condition or vision problem he has.
- c "First eye cond. (6+ yrs.)" - Mark this box if this is the first or only eye condition or vision problem the person has and he is six years old or over. Then ask question 10.
- d "Not first eye cond." - Mark this box if the condition on this Condition page is an eye condition but is not the first eye condition for this person.

Question 10, Vision Question

10. Can -- see well enough to read ordinary newspaper			
print with glasses with his	}	left	eye?..... 1 Y 2 N
		right 1 Y 2 N

1 If "First eye cond. (6+ years)" is marked, ask question 10.

Be sure to read the statement clearly so that the respondent hears the phrase "with glasses" since many people who have serious eye trouble are not limited when they are wearing their glasses, even though they may be limited without them. If the person uses glasses, the answers to question 10 should be in terms of what the person can read when he is using his glasses.

a Ask question 10 separately for each eye. When asking question 10 for a person, first use "left" and circle "Y" or "N" according to his response. Then reask question 10 using "right" and circle the appropriate letter.

b If the person cannot read (is illiterate), mark question 10 on the basis of whether he can see with either eye well enough to read if he knew how.

A4

Interviewer Check Item A4

A4

A4	a. First noticed during the past 2 weeks? (Question 9)..... Y	N (AA)
	b. Doctor seen or talked to during the past 2 weeks? (Question 2)..... Y (Fill buff form)	N
	c. One or more cut-down days? (Question 5)..... Y (Fill blue form)	N (AA)

- 1 This item indicates whether a Condition Supplement is required for this condition and if so, which one. Do not ask the questions of the respondent, but complete from previous information recorded on this Condition page.
 - a If the condition was not first noticed during the past two weeks, circle "N" in a of item A4 and continue with item AA of the Condition page for this condition.
 - b If the condition was first noticed during the past two weeks, circle "Y" in a and refer to question 2 to determine if a doctor was seen or talked to for this condition. If "Y," fill the buff form HIS-1A, Medically Attended Condition Supplement.
 - c If no doctor was seen for this condition, circle "N" in b and refer to question 5 to determine if there were one or more cut-down days. If "Y," fill Form HIS-1B, Nonmedically Attended Condition Supplement. If "N," continue with item AA of the Condition page for this condition.

AA

Item AA, When to Complete Questions 11-19

AA

AA	Continue for conditions listed or reported in probe question 31, otherwise, go to A5. For missing extremities or organs, go to A5.
	<input type="checkbox"/> Doctor seen (12) <input type="checkbox"/> Doctor not seen (11)

- 1 If the condition being carried through the Condition page is listed or was reported in probe question 31, continue with questions 11-19. Otherwise, leave these questions blank. Also, leave these questions blank if the condition is a missing extremity or organ of the body. Missing finger, hand, arm, toe, foot, or leg are all considered as missing extremities. Missing breast, kidney, lung, etc., are considered missing organs of the body.
- 2 To determine whether to ask question 11 or 12 next, refer to question 2, "Last time seen or talked to doctor." Mark the appropriate box in item AA.
- 3 If the entry in question 2 is "Never" or "DK if doctor seen," mark "Doctor not seen." Also, mark this box if the only time a doctor was seen was during interview week.
- 4 If the condition is the present effect of an accident or injury that occurred more than three months ago, questions 11-19 refer to the present effect, not to the accident itself. If the accident or injury occurred during the past three months, questions 11-19 refer to the accident or injury.
- 5 Questions 11-19 obtain information about what people who have certain conditions do or take for them and the extent to which they are bothered by these conditions. Ask question 11 if "Never" or "DK if doctor seen" was received in answer to question 2. Ask questions 12-17 for those conditions for which a doctor was seen. Ask questions 18 and 19 for all conditions carried past item AA.

11

Question 11, Do or Take Anything for Condition

11

11. During the past 12 months what did -- do or take for his . . . ? (Write in)
Anything else? _____ (18)

- 1 The phrase "do or take" means anything the person did or took for this condition. Record whatever the respondent reports whether medically oriented or not. For example, taking aspirin or using a special diet would be considered as "doing or taking" something for this particular condition. The respondent might report some patent medicines, home remedies, etc., record these also. Then ask, "Anything else?" If the respondent reports that nothing was done or taken, record "nothing."

Question 12, How Long Before Talking to Doctor

12. After -- first noticed something was wrong, about how long was it before he talked to a doctor about it?
 (Probe: Was it a matter of days, weeks, or months?)

a Discovered by doctor (14a) 4 ____ Months
 2 ____ Days 5 ____ Years
 3 ____ Weeks

- 1 Ask question 12 to determine how long it was after the person noticed something was wrong before he talked to a doctor about it. The definition of "something wrong" includes any symptom or problem the person had that gave an indication that he was not well.
 - a Record the number of day(s), week(s), month(s), or year(s). If the time reported is less than one day, mark the "Less than 1 day" box.
 - b If the respondent is uncertain of what is meant by this question, ask the probe printed below question 12 to help him determine the length of time. If the response is "Immediately" or "Right away," ask the probe question to determine the actual length of time, for example, three days, one week, etc.
 - c If the respondent reports that the condition was discovered by a doctor on a visit for some other reason, mark the box "Discovered by doctor" and go to question 14. This means the person had no indication or symptoms of this condition

13

Question 13, Do or Take Anything Before Seeing Doctor

13

13. BEFORE -- talked to a doctor about his . . . , did he do or take anything for it? 1 Y 2 N

- 1 Question 13 is similar in content to question 11 but is asked only if a doctor was seen for this condition. The emphasis of the question is on "Before -- talked to a doctor, etc." The time reference period is from the time the person first felt that something was wrong up to the time he first saw or talked to a doctor about this condition. Here again, we are referring to the first occurrence of this condition. The question requires only a "Yes" or "No" answer, and no written entries are necessary even if the respondent volunteers the information.

Question 14, Now Take Any Medicine or Treatment

14a. Does -- NOW take any medicine or treatment for his ...?	
1 Y	2 N (15)

b. Was any of this medicine or treatment recommended by a doctor?	
1 Y	2 N

- 1 Ask question 14 to determine whether the person now takes any medicine or treatment for this condition, and if so, whether this was recommended by a doctor. The medicine or treatment may be on a regular basis, such as a daily massage for paralysis due to a stroke or on an irregular basis when the medicine or treatment is taken whenever the person experiences an attack of the condition, such as, bathing in hot water for hemorrhoids.
 - a Circle "Y" or "N" without recording the medicine or treatment even though the respondent volunteers the additional information.
 - b The medicine does not have to be prescription medicine but anything the doctor advised or recommended. This is also true for the treatment of a condition, for example, using a heating pad for poor circulation.

15

Question 15, Ever Had Surgery for Condition

15

15. Has he ever had surgery for this condition? 1 Y 2 N

- 1 Ask question 15 to determine whether the person ever had surgery for this condition. For example, if the reported condition was "migraine" and a question arises about which "migraine," ask the question, "Have you ever had surgery for this migraine?" We are interested in this particular migraine, not any the respondent may have had in the past.

16

Question 16, Ever Hospitalized for Condition

16

16. Was he ever hospitalized for this condition? 1 Y 2 N

- 1 In question 16, the definition for "this condition" is the same as in question 15. For example, if the reported condition was "goiter" and a question arises, ask question 16 in the following way, "Were you ever hospitalized for this goiter?" The question only pertains to this goiter, not to any others the person might have had in the past.

17

Question 17, Number of Doctor Visits

17

During the Past 12 Months

17. During the past 12 months, about how many times has -- seen or talked to a doctor about his . . . ?
(Do not count visits while a patient in a hospital.)
____ Times ooo None

- 1 Ask question 17 to determine the number of doctor visits in the past 12 months for this condition. Include the phrase within the parentheses if a hospitalization was reported for the person for whom the Condition page is being filled. Ask question 17 even though the answer to question 2 is more than a year ago. The reason for this is that question 2 is asked about the entry in item 1, while question 17 may be asked about the entry in item 1 or question 3. Make no change in question 2 because of the answer to question 17.

18

Question 18, Bed Days During Past 12 Months

18

18. About how many days during the past 12 months has this condition kept him in bed all or most of the day?

_____ Days ooo None

- 1 In this question record the total number of days during the past 12 months which were spent in bed because of this particular condition. The word "About" means an approximation of the number of bed days is sufficient. Days in the hospital during the past 12 months for this condition should be included as bed days.
- 2 Help the Respondent to Estimate - Sometimes you may have to assist a respondent in making an estimate of the number of days. For example, you might ask, "How many days during a month did your ... usually keep you in bed; how many months was this the pattern?" or the same type of question might be asked in terms of weeks.
- 3 Check Entry - The number of days in bed in question 18, cannot be less than the number in question 6, since "the past two weeks" is part of the "past 12 months."

19a. How often does his . . . bother him - all of the time, often, once in a while, or never?

1 All the time 2 Often 3 Once in a while
 4 Never (19c) 5 Other - Specify _____

b. When it does bother him, is he bothered a great deal, some, or very little?

1 Great deal 2 Some 3 Very little
 4 Other - Specify _____

All the time in 19a (A5)

c. Does -- still have this condition?

1 Y (A5) N

d. Is this condition completely cured or is it under control?

2 Cured 3 Under control (A5)
 4 Other - Specify _____ (A5)

e. About how long did -- have this condition before it was cured?

0 Less than one month _____ Months _____ Years

- 1 In this question we are interested in the respondent's evaluation of the extent to which a condition troubles him. Therefore, there is no definition for the term "bother," but is to be defined by the respondent.
- a Question 19a, Bothers How Often - If the respondent says that the condition bothers him either "All of the time," "Often," "Once in a while," or "Never," mark whichever box applies. If the answer given is not the same as one of the categories included in the question, reask the question, and if the answer still is not the same as one of the listed categories, mark the "Other" box and record the respondent's answer verbatim. The only exception to this rule is if the answer given indicates that the person is not bothered at all by the condition, you may mark the "Never" box.
- b Question 19b, Bothered to What Extent - If the respondent indicates in 19a that the condition does bother him, ask question 19b to determine to what extent he is bothered. Follow the same procedures as given for question 19a.
- c Question 19c, Still Have This Condition - If the respondent indicated in 19a the condition bothers him "All the time," mark the box above 19c and go to A5. Otherwise, ask 19c, circle the appropriate letter and go to A5 or to 19d.

Condition Bothers (Continued)

19

- d Question 19d, Cured or Under Control - Ask question 19d to determine whether the condition is cured or is under control. "Under control" refers to persons who, by following a certain diet, taking medicine, and so forth, no longer have the symptoms of the condition. However, if they were to stop following their regimen, the symptoms might recur.

- e Question 19e, How Long Had This Condition - Ask question 19e to determine how long the person had the condition before it was cured. If a question is raised, the time period to be reported is from the time the person first noticed something was wrong until the condition was considered "Cured." Record the number of months or years or mark the "Less than one month" box.

A5

Interviewer Check Item A5

A5

A5	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident or injury	<input type="checkbox"/> Other (NC)
----	---	-------------------------------------

- 1 Complete item A5 for each condition. Carry all injuries through the accident questions whether or not they were associated with an accident.

20

Question 20, When Did the Accident (or injury) Occur

20

20a. Did the accident happen during the past 2 years or before that time?	
<input type="checkbox"/> During the past 2 years (20b)	<input type="checkbox"/> Before 2 years (21a)
b. When did the accident happen?	
<input type="checkbox"/> Last week	<input type="checkbox"/> Over 3-12 months
<input type="checkbox"/> Week before	<input type="checkbox"/> 1-2 years
<input type="checkbox"/> 2 weeks-3 months	

- 1 Ask question 20a to determine whether the accident (or injury) occurred "During the past 2 years" or "Before 2 years."
- 2 Ask question 20b only if the accident or injury occurred during the past two years.
 - a If the response does not provide enough information to mark the right box, ask additional questions. For example, if the respondent says that the accident happened "Three months ago," find out whether it was less than three months or more than three months ago, then mark the appropriate box, that is, "2 weeks-3 months" or "Over 3-12 month." This applies to any answer the respondent gives which falls on the borderline, such as "two weeks ago," "three months ago," "one year ago."
 - b If the accident was exactly three months ago (three months prior to last Sunday's date), mark the "2 week-3 months" box. If the accident occurred exactly 12 months ago, mark the "Over 3-12 months" box.

Question 21, Effects of Accident or Injury

21a. At the time of the accident what part of the body was hurt? What kind of injury was it? Anything else?	
Part(s) of body	Kind of injury
If accident happened more than 3 months ago, ask: b. What part of the body is affected now? How is his -- affected? Is he affected in any other way?	
Part(s) of body	Present effects

1. Ask the first part of question 21a and record in the space provided the "part(s) of body" which the respondent mentions. Next ask, "What kind of injury was it?" and record in the answer space the kind of injury for each part of body. Ask "Anything else?" and record any other "part(s) of body" and "kind of injury" for any other injuries mentioned.

a. General, vague answers, such as "hit," "blood clot," "bumped," "mashed," etc., are not acceptable entries for the kind of injury since they do not provide sufficient information on the nature of the injury. The specific part of body which was injured should be recorded in the same detail as shown below question 3e. The following are some examples of adequate and inadequate entries for question 21a:

<u>Adequate</u>		<u>Inadequate</u>	
<u>Part(s) of body</u>	<u>Kind of injury</u>	<u>Part(s) of body</u>	<u>Kind of injury</u>
Knee	Fractured	Arm	Crushed
Upper leg	Bruised	Leg	Mashed
Eye	Bruised	Spine	Hit with ball
Brain	Concussion	Head	Injured
Hand	Cut	Arm	Caught in washing machine
Lower back	Dislocated	Back	Hurt

Effects of Accident or Injury (Continued)

- 2 For accidents or injuries which happened more than three months ago, we need to know how the injury affects the person now. This information is obtained by asking question 21b.
 - a Record the part of body in the same detail and in the same manner as for question 21a. Record only the part of body which presently manifests any ill-effects of the old injury.
 - 1) If the present effects have been reported earlier in question 3, question 21b need not be asked again but the entries must be transcribed to 21b from question 3. For example, if the entry in 3a is "missing hand" and the "accident or injury" box is marked in 3b, the information must be transferred to 21b as follows: "One hand" in the part of body space and "missing" in the space for present effects. These entries can be made without actually asking the first part of question 21b. However, you must ask, "Is he affected in any other way?"
 - 2) When the answer to 21b is vague or expressed only in terms of some limitation, enter the limitation but also transcribe the entry from question 3, if that represents a more adequate description of the present effects. For example, in question 3, a person has been reported as having a stiff elbow caused by an accident. In answer to 21b the respondent says, "He can't bend his arm." In this case enter "can't bend arm" on the first line and the question 3 entry, that is, "stiff elbow" on the second line. In cases where the question 3 answer does not clarify the entry, reask question 21b to determine how the person is affected.
 - 3) It is not necessary that the person be suffering from ill-effects this instant to report them in 21b. If the person is subject to periodic recurring attacks of a condition caused by an old accident or injury, record these effects.
 - 4) If a person reports ill-effects of an old injury, record them even though they may not "bother" him within the literal meaning of the word. For example, a person may report a stiff elbow caused by an old football injury. He may say he had gotten used to it and it never bothers him. "Stiff elbow" would be considered the present ill-effects of an old injury.

- 5) For an injury which happened earlier but has not yet healed, enter the original injury in question 21b as the "Present effects." For example, in the case of a fractured hip occurring four months before the interview, the entry "fractured hip" is appropriate in question 21b if the fracture has not yet healed. For these cases, indicate that the injury had not yet healed.

22

Question 22, Where Did the Accident Happen

22

<p>22. Where did the accident happen?</p> <p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> At home (inside house)</p> <p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> At home (adjacent premises)</p> <p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> Street and highway (includes roadway and public sidewalk)</p> <p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> Farm</p> <p>5 <input type="checkbox"/> Industrial place (includes premises)</p> <p>6 <input type="checkbox"/> School (includes premises)</p> <p>7 <input type="checkbox"/> Place of recreation and sports, except at school</p> <p>8 <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify) <u> </u></p>
--

1 Ask and mark question 22 for each accident or injury. Use the following definition as a guide:

a Home - "Home" as used here includes not only the person's own home but also any other home, vacant or occupied, in which he might have been when he was injured, as well as homes being remodeled or undergoing repair. Do not consider an accident occurring at a house under construction as occurring at home, but mark the box "Industrial place" for these.

1) At Home (Inside House) - The accident occurred while the person was inside the house, in any room or porch but not an inside garage. Porches, or steps leading directly to porches or entrances, are considered as "inside the house." Also include in this category injuries happening within motel or hotel rooms. The lobby, corridors and other public places within the motel or hotel premises are not regarded as "home." Mark then as "Other," and specify.

2) At Home (Adjacent Premises) - The accident occurred in the yard, the driveway, patios, gardens or walks to the house or a garage. On a farm, the adjacent premises include the home premises or garage, but not the barns or other buildings (unless used as a garage) or the land under cultivation.

- b Street and Highway -- "Street and highway" means the entire width between property lines of which any part is open for use of the public as a matter of right or custom. This includes more than just the traveled part of the road. "Street and highway" includes the whole right-of-way. Public sidewalks are part of the street but private driveways, private lanes, private alleys and private sidewalks are not considered part of the street.
- c Farm - The accident occurred in a farm building or on land under cultivation but not in the farm home or premises. "Farm" includes a ranch, as used here.
- d Industrial Place - The accident occurred in industrial places, such as a factory building, a railway yard, a warehouse, a workshop, a loading platform of a factory or store, etc. Include construction projects (houses, buildings, bridges, new roads, etc.) as well as buildings undergoing remodeling. Do not classify private homes undergoing remodeling as industrial places, but classify them as a "home." Other examples of "industrial places" are logging camps, shipping piers, oil fields, shipyards, sand and gravel pits, canneries, and auto repair garages.
- e School - The accident occurred either in the school buildings or on the premises (campus). Include all types of schools, elementary, high schools, colleges, business schools, etc.
- f Place of Recreation and Sports - The accident occurred in places designed for sports and recreation, such as a bowling alley, amusement park, baseball field, dance hall, lake, mountain or beach resort and stadium. Exclude places of recreation and sports located on the premises of an industrial place or school, and places not designed for recreation or sports, such as a hill used for sliding or a river used for boating or swimming.
- g Other - The specific types of places listed above do not describe where the accident happened. If "Other" is marked, specify the exact type of place, such as grocery store, restaurant, office building, church, etc. General entries, such as "Armed Forces" are not satisfactory, since a person can be in the Armed Forces and have an accident in any one of several kinds of places.

23

Question 23, At Work When Accident Happened

23

23. Was -- at work at his job or business when the accident happened?			
1 Y		3 <input type="checkbox"/> While in Armed Services	
2 N		4 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 at time of accident	

- 1 Ask or mark question 23 for all accidents or injuries. Use the following as a guide:
 - a Consider an injury as occurring "at work" if the person was on duty at the time of the accident. Thus, a salesman traveling from town to town would be "at work" if an injury occurred en route between towns, but a person on his way to an office job who had an accident en route would not be considered as having been injured "at work."
 - b Mark "While in Armed Services" for any injury or poisoning which occurred while the person was in the Armed Service (excluding the Reserves), regardless of whether he was on duty at the time it occurred. For ~~example~~, mark the box "While in Armed Services" for a sailor who was away from his ship when he slipped, fell on the ice and broke his leg on a downtown street.
 - c Mark "Under 17 at time of accident" if the person was under 17 years of age at the time of the accident or injury.

Question 24, Motor Vehicle Involved

24a. Was a car, truck, bus, or other motor vehicle involved in the accident in any way?	1 Y	2 N (26)
b. Was more than one vehicle involved?	Y	N
c. Was it (either one) moving at the time?	1 Y	2 N

Should Be
NC

1 Ask question 24a to determine if any motor vehicles were involved in the accident.

a Motor Vehicle - A power operated vehicle, not on rails, for transporting persons or property, intended for use on a land highway, either public or private; or a self-propelled nonhighway vehicle, such as construction equipment, tractor, farm machinery, or tank when operating on a highway. Attached objects, such as a sled, coaster, or trailer are considered as part of the motor vehicle.

1) Recreation vehicles, such as mini-bikes, go-carts, or snowmobiles are not usually included in the definition of motor vehicles. The only time they are classified as motor vehicles is when they are in operation on a land highway.

b Some respondents may think of certain nonmotor vehicles, such as trains, streetcars, or bicycles as motor vehicles and report accidents involving those vehicles as "Yes" answers to question 24a. Record such accidents as "No" in question 24a.

c Circle "Y" for each accident involving a motor vehicle in any way at all, regardless of whether the person was in the vehicle and regardless of whether the vehicle was moving at the time of the accident. For example, a pedestrian hit by a car, a person on a bicycle hurt by running into a parked car, a person hurt while repairing a car. Report these as accidents involving a motor vehicle as well as the case of a person hurt in a collision or some other type of accident while riding in a motor vehicle.

2 Ask question 24b if the answer to question 24a is "Yes." Again, be careful that only motor vehicles are included. Exclude nonmotor vehicles.

24

Motor Vehicle Involved (Continued)

24

- 3 Ask question 24c if the answer to question 24a is "Yes," regardless of the answer to question 24b.
 - a Motor Vehicle, Moving - If there is a question, consider the motor vehicle as moving if the wheels were moving (this includes skidding) or if the vehicle had come to a stop just an instant before the accident occurred.
 - 1) If only one motor vehicle was involved ("No" in question 24b), ask question 24c without the parenthetical phrase.
 - 2) If a motor vehicle and a nonmotor vehicle were involved, for example, a bus and train collision, substitute "motor vehicle" or "bus" for "it" to be sure the respondent understands that question 24c refers to the motor vehicle and not to the other vehicle.

CHAPTER 5. DOCTOR VISITS PAGES

A General Instructions--Two-Week Doctor Visits

The Two-Week Doctor Visits page consists of two facing pages containing columns for five doctor visits. Refer to the "DOCTOR" box in item C1 to see if any two-week doctor visits or calls were reported for the family. If none were reported, leave the Two-Week Doctor Visits page blank. If there are more than five two-week doctor visits reported for a family, use an additional questionnaire.

- 1 When to Fill a Two-Week Doctor Visits Page - Complete a doctor visits column for each doctor visit or call after completing the Condition pages for all conditions entered in C2.
- 2 Details of Two-Week Doctor Visits - Fill one column for each doctor visit or call in the two-week reference period. Begin with the first person reporting doctor visits and continue in the same manner for each succeeding person.
- 3 Two or More Doctors Seen on Same Visit - If two or more doctors were seen on the same visit, fill a doctor visit column for each doctor seen and indicate this in a footnote. Situations of this kind generally occur when a person visits a clinic where he sees doctors with different specialties; for example, a dermatologist in one office and an internist in another office. It might also occur when a person visits his family doctor who, in the course of the same visit, calls in a specialist to examine or treat the person.
- 4 Visit to Doctor and Laboratory on Same Visit - The foregoing rule also applies if a person visits a doctor and the doctor immediately sends him to a neighboring laboratory for tests, X-rays, and so forth. Consider this a separate visit if the laboratory is not a part of the doctor's office or clinic and renders a separate bill for its services.
- 5 Consistency Check - Make a check mark to the right of the number of visits in item C1 as you complete each doctor visits column, for example 2 ✓. This indicates that two doctor visit columns have been completed for that person. Before leaving the Two-Week Doctor Visits pages, count the number of completed doctor visit columns for each person (excluding any that you have deleted). If this number differs from the number of visits in item C1, make any corrections necessary to make the entries consistent as follows:

Add to C1 any additional visits first reported in question 2b on the Doctor Visits page.

or

Subtract from item C1 any that you have deleted because they were outside the two-week reference period or "mass visits."

- 6 Mass Visits - If when filling a doctor visit column, a "mass visit" is discovered, delete it at this point. Probe to determine if there were any other two-week visits and if so, enter the date in question 2 and complete the column. If there were no other doctor visits, enter "mass visit" and correct the entry in item C1.
- 7 Illness Condition First Reported on Two-Week Doctor Visits Page - Enter any conditions or injury first reported on the Two-Week Doctor Visits page in item C2 and fill a Condition page for it after completing all required doctor visit columns.

①

Item 1, Person Number

①

Person number _____

- 1 Enter the person number for whom the "visit" information is being obtained. This entry identifies the person who has made the visit and is essential for tabulation purposes. If it is incorrect, all of the "visit" information will be attributed to the wrong person.

Question 2, Date of Visit

Earlier, you told me that --- had seen or talked to a doctor during the past 2 weeks.	OR { 7777 <input type="checkbox"/> Last week 8888 <input type="checkbox"/> Week before
2a. On what (other) dates during that 2-week period did --- visit or talk to a doctor?	2a. <u> </u> <u> </u> Month Date
b. Were there any other doctor visits for him during that period?	b. Y (Reask 2a and b) N (Ask 3-6 for each visit)

- 1 Read the introductory statement above question 2a only once for each family before asking question 2a for the first doctor visit.
- 2 Question 2a is used to record the date (month and day) of each reported doctor visit. Ask the question as worded, unless you know the "visit" you are asking about is a telephone call, in which case say, "On what date during that two-week period did -- talk to a doctor?" If more than one visit has been reported for a person, it is desirable (but not mandatory) to have the most recent visit listed first.
 - a In recording the date of the visit, enter both the month and the date, for example, July 23. An estimate of the exact date of the month is acceptable, but use the two-week calendar to help the respondent recall the exact date as closely as possible. If the exact date cannot be determined, at least determine the week. In this case, mark the "Last week" or the "Week before" box.
 - b If in recording the date of the visit, you learn that the visit actually took place outside the reference period (either before the two-week dates or during interview week), enter the date in 2a but delete this doctor visit by X-ing out the remainder of the column and correct item C1.
- 3 Question 2b serves to remind the respondent of any additional visits that he may have forgotten to report earlier. Ask the question after entering the dates for all visits reported in C1 for this person.

② Date of Visit (Continued)

②

- a If any additional two-week visits are reported, reask question 2a, using the word "other" and record the date(s) for the additional visit(s) in question 2a of the next column(s).
- b Note that question 2b must always have a "No" entry in a person's last doctor visit column since a "Yes" entry in question 2b requires the filling of another column which in turn requires the reasking of question 2b. If the answer to that question is "Yes," still another doctor visit column must be filled. If the answer is "No," that is the last column for the person.

<p>3. Where did he see the doctor on the (date), at a clinic, hospital, doctor's office, or some other place?</p> <p>If Hospital: Was it the outpatient clinic or the emergency room?</p> <p>If Clinic: Was it a hospital outpatient clinic, a company clinic, or some other kind of clinic?</p>	<p>3. <input type="checkbox"/> 0 While inpatient in hospital (Next DV)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 1 Doctor's office (group practice or doctor's clinic)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 2 Telephone</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 3 Hospital Outpatient Clinic</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 4 Home</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 5 Hospital Emergency Room</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 6 Company or Industry Clinic</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 7 Other - Specify →</p>
--	---

1 Ask question 3, inserting the date of the visit. If the response to this question is "Hospital" or "Clinic," ask the appropriate probe question to determine if this was the outpatient clinic, emergency room, company clinic, etc. Mark the box which indicates the kind of place (not the name of the place) in accordance with the following definitions:

- a While Inpatient in Hospital - Any doctor's visit which occurred while the person was in a hospital overnight or longer. Mark this box and do not ask questions 4-6 but go on to the next doctor's visit or to the Hospital page.
- b Doctor's Office - The office of a doctor in private practice. This may be an office in the doctor's home, an individual office in an office building or a suite of offices occupied by several doctors. This category also includes "doctors clinic," meaning the offices of a group of doctors.
- c Telephone - A telephone call made to, or from a doctor or doctor's office which relates to treatment or advice given by a doctor directly or transmitted through a nurse.
- d Hospital Outpatient Clinic - A unit of a hospital where persons may go for medical care without being admitted as an inpatient.
- e Home - Any place the person was staying at the time of the doctor's visit. It may be his own home, the home of a friend, a hotel room, etc.
- f Hospital Emergency Room - A unit of a hospital where persons may receive medical care, usually of an urgent nature, without or before being admitted as an inpatient.

③ Place of Visit (Continued)

③

- h Company or Industry Clinic - A company or plant doctor's office or clinic which is operated solely for the employees of that company or industry.
- i Other (Dispensaries, Community Health Centers, Etc.) - In the space provided, specify or give the best description of the place which you can obtain. Fill this space only if the "Other" box is marked.

Question 4, Kind of Doctor

4. Is the doctor a general practitioner or a specialist?	4. <input type="checkbox"/> General practitioner <input type="checkbox"/> Specialist - What kind of specialist is he? → _____
--	--

- 1 If the respondent says that the doctor is a specialist, mark the "Specialist" box and ask the follow-up question. Record the kind of specialist named by the respondent. If the respondent does not know the term for the specialist, but only knows what he specializes in, enter that information in the space provided, for example, heart ailments, X-ray doctor, etc.
 - a A general practitioner is a medical doctor who does not limit his practice to a specialty.
 - b A specialist is a medical doctor who limits his practice to certain groups of people (children, women, etc.), certain conditions (diabetes, arthritis, etc.), certain parts of the body (eyes, ears, nose and throat, etc.) or special procedures (anesthesia, radiology, etc.).
 - c Do not make double entries, for example, GP and internist, without some further explanation of the entry. If the respondent cannot specifically say whether the doctor is a GP or an internist, your entry should reflect this fact by an entry such as "GP or internist—DK which."
 - d If the respondent does not know whether or not the person rendering the service for this visit is a doctor, enter "DK if Dr." Also enter any other information available which describes the person providing the service, such as "lab technician," or "X-ray technician."

- 2 If you learn that the doctor is not a medical doctor at all, it is particularly important that this fact be noted. In this case, enter "Not an MD" and also describe what he does, for example, chiropractor, oral surgeon, dentist. Do not delete these kinds of doctor visits from the Doctor Visits page even though they do not fit the definition of a medical doctor described earlier.

Question 5, Doctor Seen or Talked To

5

5

5. During this visit (call) did --- actually see (talk to) the doctor?	5.	1 Y 2 N
--	----	------------------------------

- 1 This question determines if the doctor was actually seen or talked to during this visit. Circle "Y" or "N" as appropriate. If "Telephone" is marked in question 3, use the phrases "call" and "talk to" when asking question 5.

Question 6, Purpose of Visit

<p>6a. Why did he visit (call) the doctor on <u> </u> (date) ?</p> <p>Write in reason</p> <p>Mark appropriate box(es)</p>	<p>6a.</p> <p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> Diag. or treatment (6c)</p> <p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> General checkup (6b)</p> <p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> Pre or Postnatal care</p> <p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> Eye exam. (glasses)</p> <p>5 <input type="checkbox"/> Immunization</p> <p>6 <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p> <p>} (Next DV)</p>
<p>b. Was this for any specific condition?</p>	<p>b. Y (Enter condition in 6a and change to "Diag. or treatment") N (Next DV)</p>
<p>Mark box or ask:</p> <p>c. For what condition did <u> </u> visit the doctor on <u> </u> (date) ?</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Condition reported in 6a</p> <p>c.</p>

1 Ask question 6a, inserting the date the visit was made. Then write in the response verbatim and mark one or more of the boxes provided which best describes the answer given.

a Diagnosis or Treatment

1) An examination or test to diagnose an illness, regardless of whether the examination or tests resulted in a diagnosis.

or

2) Treatment or advice given by the doctor or under the doctor's supervision. Include X-rays either for diagnostic purposes or treatment in this class.

Also, mark this box when the visit is for the detection of a single condition by use of a glaucoma test, diabetes test, T.B. test, or a pap smear for cancer. Do not enter the condition in 6c or C2 unless it was discovered on this visit.

If the visit is for a specific condition and while there the person is given a general checkup, mark both the "Diag. or treatment" and the "General checkup" boxes.

b General Checkup - A visit to a doctor for the purpose of determining the general state of the person's health. This category includes checkups for specific purposes, such as physical examinations required to obtain employment, for college entrance, to obtain insurance, periodic (yearly) general checkups, visits to the well-baby clinic, etc.

However, a visit to a doctor for a checkup or examination for a specific condition, such as when a person goes at regular intervals for a checkup for T.B. or a heart condition, should not be classified as "General checkup" but as "Diagnosis or treatment."

6

Purpose of Visit (Continued)

6

- c Pre or Postnatal Care - Consultation concerning the care of the mother, not the baby. Include visits by the mother to the doctor for checkups during the pregnancy and also during the period just after delivery. Exclude consultation for illnesses not related to pregnancy or delivery.
 - d Eye Examination - An examination of the eyes for the purpose of establishing a need for eyeglasses or for a change in the type of eyeglasses being worn. Any other eye examination or treatment of an eye condition is classified as "Diag. or treatment."
 - e Immunization or Vaccination - Shots or injections to prevent particular diseases.
 - f Other - Is used to record medical services received other than those listed or those which you do not know how to classify. Record the type of service as reported by the respondent. If necessary, use the footnote space for continuing the description of the medical service received.
- 2 Sometimes more than one service is provided during the same visit; if this is discovered, record all services received during one visit. However, do not probe for any additional services but enter them only if they are voluntarily reported together, for example, the respondent says, "I had a prenatal checkup; the doctor also gave me a polio shot for protection." In this case, mark both "Pre or Postnatal care" and "Immunization." If multiple reasons are given for the same doctor visit, follow the skip instruction for the category appearing first in the list.
- 3 Ask question 6b only if the "General checkup" box is marked in 6a. If a condition is given, circle "Y" and enter the condition in 6a. Then correct the box in 6a to "Diag. or treatment." If no condition is given, circle "N" and go to the next doctor visit.
- a If it is volunteered that a condition was discovered during a routine physical examination, do not enter this condition as the reason for the doctor visit unless there were symptoms which led to the examination. If there were symptoms of this condition, make the necessary corrections. If there were no symptoms, leave the original entries.

- 4 Ask or mark 6c only if the "Diag. or treatment" box is marked in 6a.
 - a If you already have a condition in the write-in box in 6a, mark "Condition reported in 6a" in the answer space in 6c without asking the question.
 - b If you ask 6c, record all conditions (or reasons for seeing the doctor) mentioned for that person in the answer space.
 - c If the person visited the doctor for tests but no specific condition was discovered, enter the response verbatim.

CHAPTER 6. HOSPITAL PAGE

A General Procedure

The Hospital page consists of two facing pages containing columns for four hospitalizations. The "HOSP." box in item C1 in each person's column will indicate which persons were in hospitals or nursing homes, rest homes and similar places during the specified time period, and the number of times. If no hospitalizations are reported, leave these pages blank. If there are more than four hospitalizations reported for a family, use additional questionnaires.

B Use of the Hospital Page

Begin with the hospitalization(s) for the first person listed who has one or more hospitalizations recorded in item C1. Fill the first column, starting with the most recent stay and continuing until all stays for that person have been recorded. Then go to the next person reporting hospitalizations and continue until all hospital stays have been recorded.

- 1 Each column represents information about a particular hospital stay, and all the questions apply to that stay.
- 2 If a person was moved (transferred) from one hospital to another, for example, from an emergency hospital to a general hospital or from a general hospital to an extended care facility, record each as a separate stay.
- 3 When a hospitalization is for childbirth, fill one column for the mother and a separate column for the baby.
- 4 Since a separate column is filled for each stay (time) in a hospital, the number of columns filled for a person must equal the total number of hospitalizations in that person's column of item C1. If not, correct the figure in item C1 and explain the reason for the correction in a footnote.
- 5 Make a checkmark to the right of the number in item C1 as you complete each column. If the person had a total of three hospital stays recorded in item C1, there should be three checkmarks, for example, "3 ✓✓✓."

C Use the Appropriate Word When Asking the Question

Because the Hospital page is filled for stays in regular hospitals and also for stays in nursing homes, convalescent homes, rest homes and similar places, refer to the appropriate type of place in each question. The questions contain the words "nursing home" in parentheses. The instructions in later paragraphs use the word "hospital." However, the instructions given for a hospital stay also apply to stays in nursing homes, rest homes and similar places.

D Check with Question 18 of the Appropriate Condition Page

If the hospitalization(s) is for a condition which has been carried beyond item AA of a Condition page, ask if the nights reported in question 5a of the hospital column(s) have been included in the number of days reported in question 18 of the appropriate Condition page. If they have not, correct the figure in question 18. This check may be made after the hospital column(s) for the person has been completed.

E Special Note on Frequent Hospitalizations for the Same Person

Sometimes a person has been in and out of the hospital several times during the reference period. If the respondent cannot remember or does not know the details of each different stay, ask him to estimate the necessary information using the calendar when needed. Enter all available information in a separate column for each estimated stay.

Item 1, Person Number

①

①

1. Person number _____

- 1 Enter the person number of the person for whom the column is being completed. This number must be correct. Otherwise, all the hospital information will be assigned to the wrong person.

(1)

2

Question 2, Date Entered Hospital

2

You said that -- was in the hospital (nursing home) during the past year.		USE YOUR CALENDAR		Month	Day	Year
2. When did -- enter the hospital (nursing home) (the last time)?		Make sure the YEAR is correct.		2.		19__

- 1 Read the introductory statement above question 2 for the first hospital column for a person. If stays are reported in both a hospital and nursing home, read the introductory phrase as follows: "You said that you were in a hospital and a nursing home during the past year. Which place were you in last, the hospital or the nursing home?" so that you can insert the appropriate word in the following questions. Then continue with question 2.
- 2 If the person was in a hospital or a nursing home more than once during the period, add the parenthetical phrase, "the last time," to the end of question 2. As indicated by this phrase, record the most recent hospital or nursing home stay first if the person had more than one stay. For the remaining columns, begin with the question, "When did you enter the hospital the time before?" and so on, for each subsequent hospitalization. Write in the month, day, and year the person entered the hospital.
- 3 If the respondent cannot furnish the exact date, obtain the best estimate possible. Use the calendars or the list of holidays in your flashcard booklet to assist the respondent in recalling dates. Ask whatever additional questions seem appropriate.

Some examples of questions you might ask to assist the respondent in recalling dates are:

Can you recall the approximate date?

Do you know which week of the month it was?

Do you recall the day of the week you entered the hospital?

Was it before or after Memorial Day (or some other special date)?

Was it in the early part, the middle part or the last part of the month?

- a If, after your probing the respondent cannot give the exact date but can set it as between two dates, enter both dates, for example, 5-10. As a last resort, enter the part of the month, for example, early part, near the end of the month, etc.

Print out 85%

(186)

② Date Entered Hospital (Continued)

②

- b If, after your additional questioning using the calendar, the respondent cannot say which month it was but that it was one of two, enter both, for example, Mar. or Apr. If the respondent is unable to name any months, ask what season of the year it was, for example, "Was it in the winter or spring?" and enter the season, that is, "winter" for the month.
- c You should always be able to make some sort of write-in entry in question 2. For statistical purposes, a date must always be assigned for each hospital entry, so it is essential that you obtain the maximum amount of information available.
- 4 Experience has shown that it is very easy to make a mistake in entering the year a person was hospitalized, particularly when you are working in a different calendar year from the reported year of hospitalization. In all cases, make sure that you have entered the correct year in question 2.

Question 3, Name and Address of Hospital

3. What is the name and address of this hospital (nursing home)?	1.	Street	
		City (or county)	State

- 1 Enter the name and address of the hospital (nursing home, rest home, sanitarium, etc.). The exact street address is not required, but the name of the street on which the hospital is located is needed to help identify the hospital. If the name of the street is not known, enter "DK." If the city is not known or the hospital is not in a city, enter the county and State.
- 2 It is important to obtain the full and complete name of the hospital in order to classify each hospital by type. If the respondent abbreviates the name or supplies only a shortened local name, such as county hospital or general hospital, when he means Baker County Hospital or Detroit General Hospital, it is necessary to obtain and record the full name.
 - a Be sure that you have the correct name of the hospital. For example, Baker County may operate a hospital but its name is Jeremiah Wilson Memorial Hospital. In such a case, it would be impossible to identify Baker County Hospital for classification. In cases in which it is possible that the respondent could be giving the name as it is referred to locally, ask the respondent if that is the complete name of the hospital.
 - b For college infirmaries, we need to know the name of the university or college and whether it is the student health center (clinic) or the college hospital. For example, infirmary at UCLA would not be classifiable, whereas, UCLA Student Health Service or University of California Hospital would be.
- 3 Be sure that your entries of the name of the hospital, the street, and the city or county are legible. If the respondent is not sure how to spell any one of the names, spell it phonetically and footnote that it is a phonetic spelling.
- 4 If you are interviewing in the general area in which the hospital is located and have ready access to a local telephone directory, check it for doubtful hospital names. Also, if the respondent does not know the name of the street on which the hospital is located, check the telephone directory for that, when possible.

1176

④

Question 4, Number of Nights in Hospital

④

4. How many nights was -- in the hospital (nursing home)?	4. _____ Nights
---	-----------------

- 1 Enter in question 4, the total nights spent in the hospital. Do not include any nights in the interview week. However, all nights in the hospital through "last Sunday night" are to be entered, including nights prior to the date used in the hospital probe questions.
 - a If the respondent's answer is in terms of days, repeat the question so that he understands we are interested only in the number of nights. For example, a first answer of, "I was in for seven days," might mean six, seven or eight nights. Such answers should always be followed up by repeating the question or asking an additional question to clarify the answer.
- 2 Not Overnight, Delete - If you learn that the person did not remain overnight for this stay in the hospital, enter "None" in question 4 but do not ask any further questions about this hospitalization. Delete this hospitalization by X-ing out the remainder of the column and correct the figure in item C.
- 3 Entire Stay Prior to Reference Period, Delete - If the respondent's answer to the date of hospital entry for question 2 and the number of nights for question 4 indicates that the entire stay was prior to the reference period, that is, before the date specified in the hospital probe question, check with the respondent to verify that you have the correct date of entry and number of nights. If the entire stay was prior to the reference period for the hospital probe question, delete this hospitalization by X-ing out the remainder of the column and correct the figure in item C. Explain in a footnote that you have verified the date of entry and number of nights, and that the stay was prior to the reference period.

Handwritten note: ... T ... 8 2 70

④

5

Question 5, Nights in Past 12 Months and Two Weeks;
in Hospital Last Sunday Night

5

Complete Q. 5 from entries in Q. 3 and 4. If not clear, ask the questions.	
a. How many of these --- nights were during the past 12 months?	5a. _____ Nights
b. How many of these --- nights were during the past 2 weeks?	b. _____ Nights
c. Was --- still in the hospital (nursing home) last Sunday night for this hospitalization (stay)?	c. Y N

1 Question 5 is divided into three parts, and each part can usually be answered based on the information obtained earlier in questions 2 and 4. In such cases, do not ask the questions, but be sure to make the appropriate entries.

a Question 5a, Number of Nights in Past 12 Months - "The past 12 months" is defined as from "last Sunday's" date a year ago (entered in dentist and doctor visit reference date in C2) through last Sunday night, and includes both the beginning and ending dates.

- 1) If the answer to question 5a is not clear from earlier information, ask the question again, using the appropriate yearly calendar to assist the respondent in recalling dates.
- 2) If all the nights in question 4 were in the past 12 months, copy the question 4 figure to question 5a.
- 3) If none of the nights in question 4 were in the past 12 months, enter a dash (for none) in question 5a. Do not delete the column in such a case. Complete the remaining entries in the column.

b Question 5b, Nights in Hospital During Last Two Weeks - If the date in question 2 and the number of nights in question 4 show that none of the nights in the hospital could possibly have been last week or the week before, enter a dash in question 5b. If there is any chance at all that any part of the hospitalization was in the two-week reference period, and the answer is not clear from earlier information, ask the question and record the number of nights or enter a dash as the case may be.

c Question 5c, Still There Last Sunday Night - Circle "Y" or "N" for this hospital stay in question 5c. If the date in question 2 and the number of nights in question 4 show that this stay could not possibly have included last Sunday night, circle "N" without asking the question. If there is any doubt, ask the question.

NOTE: If the person was in the hospital last Sunday night for his most recent hospital stay, "N" would be circled in question 5c for any previous hospital stays reported for him.

Handwritten: 32.7 ... 8376

Handwritten: 1172

Question 6, Condition Causing Hospitalization

5. For what condition did -- enter the hospital (nursing home) -- do you know the medical name? If medical name unknown, enter an adequate description.		6. <input type="checkbox"/> Normal delivery <input type="checkbox"/> Normal at birth	
For delivery ask: Was this a normal delivery?	} If "No." ask: What was the matter?	Condition	
For newborn, ask: Was the baby normal at birth?		Cause	<input type="checkbox"/> On Card C
		Kind	
		Part of body	

- 1 The entry in question 6 should fully describe the condition for which the person entered the hospital. If the medical name is not known, enter the best description of the condition which the respondent can give. All the rules for the entry of "cause," "kind," or "part of body" for the Condition page apply to entries in question 6. If this information is required in question 6 but is not known by the respondent, enter "DK" on the line. If the present effects of allergy are needed, enter these effects on the "kind" line.
 - a For persons going to the hospital for tests or diagnosis, enter the results of the tests or the final diagnosis if known; otherwise, enter the trouble or condition that made the tests seem necessary.
 - b If the respondent reports that a person entered the hospital to have an operation other than "vasectomy," enter in question 6 the condition which made the operation necessary. For example, if the respondent states "Amputation of one leg above knee," ask for the condition which made the operation necessary—it may be diabetes, leg cut in accident, etc. If the condition for which the operation was done is unknown, enter this fact together with the name or description of the operation, for example, "Hysterectomy, DK reason."
 - c If more than one condition was diagnosed or treated during a particular hospital stay, enter all such conditions.
 - d If the condition for which the person entered the hospital is on Card C, mark the "On Card C" box to indicate no further entries are required. Do not mark this box if a Card C condition is given in answer to a later part of question 6, for example, cause, kind, or part of body. If two conditions are reported as the reason for entering the hospital and one is not on Card C, record the required entries for cause, kind, and part of body for this condition.

2 Accidents or Injuries - If the entry in question 6 is the result of an injury which occurred during the three-month period preceding the date of interview, the rules for the entries of "part of body" and "kind of injury" that apply to the Condition page also apply to question 6, for example, "one lower leg broken - accident." If the entry in question 6 is the present effect of an injury that occurred more than three months ago, the Condition page rules for "part of body" and "present effects" also apply here, for example, "pain in one lower leg - accident."

3 Deliveries and Births - For deliveries and births, question 6 should be asked this way:

a For the mother ask, "Was this a normal delivery?" If "Yes," mark the "Normal delivery" box and go to question 7. If "No," ask, "What was the matter?" and record on the condition line the respondent's description of the complications, for example, delivery—breech.

b For the baby ask, "Was the baby normal at birth?" If "Yes," mark the "Normal at birth" box and go to question 7. If "No," ask "What was the matter?" and record on the condition line the respondent's description of what was wrong with the baby, for example, newborn—incubator baby, jaundice.

NOTE: The delivery for the mother may be "Normal" but the baby may be born with a deformity. Conversely, the mother's delivery may have complications, for example, Caesarian section, but the baby may be normal. In some cases, it is possible that the mother's delivery may be complicated by an illness condition. When in doubt as to what constitutes "complications," enter all available information.

7

Question 7, Operations Performed

7

7a. Were any operations performed on -- during this stay at the hospital (nursing home)?	7a.	Y	N (B)
b. What was the name of the operation? If name of operation is not known, describe what was done.	b.		
c. Any other operations during this stay?	c.	Y (Describe) 7	N

1 Ask question 7 for stays in nursing homes, rest homes, etc., as well as for hospital stays, since some of the procedures, which by our definition are operations, may be performed in these places.

a If any operations were performed on the person during this stay in the hospital, circle "Y" and ask 7b. Enter the name of the operation in the write-in space. If the name of the operation is not known, ask the respondent to describe what was done and enter this description, then ask 7c. If "Yes," circle "Y" and describe the operation. Be sure to record each operation, if more than one was performed during this stay. Continue to ask 7c until you receive a "No" answer and then circle "N."

1) Operation - Any cutting of the skin, including stitching of cuts or wounds. Include cutting of other tissue, scraping of internal parts of the body, for example, curettage of the uterus, and setting of fractures and dislocations. Also, include the insertion of instruments in body openings for internal examination and treatment, such as bronchoscopy, proctoscopy, cystoscopy, and the introduction of tubes for drainage. Include anything ending in "-ectomy," for example, appendectomy (removal of appendix), tonsillectomy (removal of tonsils), etc. Exclude injections, transfusions and routine blood tests, pumping out or washing out of the stomach or bowels. Also, exclude routine circumcision for a newborn baby.

2 In some cases, respondents may not think of the setting of fractures and dislocations or the stitching of cuts or wounds as operations. If the person entered the hospital for such an injury and the respondent says no operation was performed, ask if the bone or joint was set or if stitches were taken in the cut or wound. If the answer is "Yes," enter the action taken as the name of the operation, for example, "Broken wrist" in question 6, "Wrist set" in question 7. If the respondent reports that the bone was not set, etc., explain the circumstances in 7b.

11/17/73 5:59c

⑦ Operations Performed (Continued)

⑦

3 If more than one operation is performed, or if the operation was not performed for the condition recorded in question 6, ask for the name of the condition and record it in question 7 in addition to the name of the operation.

a An acceptable entry would be:

Question 6 - Tonsillitis

Question 7 - Tonsillectomy

or

Question 6 - Goiter

Question 7 - Removal of thyroid gland

b An unacceptable entry would be:

Question 6 - Gallstones

Question 7 - Removed gallbladder and hysterectomy

or

Question 6 - Kidney trouble

Question 7 - Cystoscope and removal of tumor

In b above, we need to know the reason for the hysterectomy or the site and kind of tumor.

8

Interviewer Check Item 8

8

8. NOTE: If the condition in Q.6 or 7 is in Q.31 or there is "1" or more nights in Q.50, a Condition page is required. If there is no Condition page, fill one after completing columns for all required hospitalizations.

- 1 Item 8 gives instructions on how to handle conditions first reported on the Hospital page.
 - a A condition first reported in question 6 or 7 should have a completed Condition page only if some part of the hospitalization was during the past two weeks or if the condition is listed in question 31.
 - b If the hospital stay is for delivery and some part of the stay was during the past two weeks, a Condition page is required for the mother but not for the newborn baby if he was normal at birth. If he was not normal at birth, a Condition page is also required for the baby.
- 2 When a Condition page is required, enter this condition in item C2 after completing this hospital column. Then carry the condition(s) through the Condition page after completing columns for all required hospitalizations.

CHAPTER 7. PRESCRIBED MEDICINE

A General

Questions 1-4 determine the extent of legal drug acquisition during the two-week period prior to the interview. Question 1a is a general question which determines whether any family member obtained any prescribed medicines during that two-week period. Questions 2, 3, and 4 are additional probes designed to obtain prescribed medicines which may not have been reported in question 1a and yet meet our definition of "prescribed medicines;" that is, medicines which were obtained either through a telephone call from a doctor to a pharmacy (question 2a), a refill of an old prescription (question 3a), or through free samples or other medicine actually received from a doctor to take at home (question 4a).

B Prescribed Medicine, Defined

"Medicine prescribed by a doctor" is defined as: (1) Any medicine obtained on a doctor's written prescription, (2) any medicine which has been prepared on the basis of a doctor's telephone call to a pharmacist, or (3) any medicine given by the doctor (or nurse) to the person to take at home.

There are some kinds of medicine which require an initial prescription, but do not for refills; for example, insulin used for the control of diabetes. The original prescription is primarily to advise the pharmacist and the patient as to the type of insulin to be taken. Medicine of this kind should be counted as medicine prescribed by a doctor, even though the doctor may not issue a written prescription or call the pharmacist for each refill.

Exclude as prescribed medicine, medicines, shots, or injections administered to the person in the doctor's office or in a hospital or clinic.

C Table M

Complete a line of Table M for each medicine reported in questions 1-4.

Questions 1-4, Obtained During Past 2 Weeks

① — ④

① — ④

1a. During the past 2 weeks, (the 2 weeks outlined in red on that calendar) did anyone in the family, (that is you, your —, etc.) buy or obtain any (other) kind of medicine prescribed by a doctor?	Y	N (2)
b. What is the name of the medicine? Enter name of medicine in col. (b) of Table M and ask: What condition is it for? Enter name of condition in col. (c) and reask 1a.		
(Besides the prescriptions you have already told me about)		
2a. During the past 2 weeks did anyone in the family get any (other) medicine from a pharmacist or drugstore that was prescribed by a telephone call from a doctor?	Y	N (3)
b. What is the name of the medicine? Enter name of medicine in col. (b) of Table M and ask: What condition is it for? Enter name of condition in col. (c) and reask 2a.		
(Besides the prescriptions you have already told me about)		
3a. During the past 2 weeks did anyone in the family have any (other) prescriptions refilled?	Y	N (4)
b. What is the name of the medicine? Enter name of medicine in col. (b) of Table M and ask: What condition is it for? Enter name of condition in col. (c) and reask 3a.		
(Besides the prescriptions you have already told me about)		
4a. During the past two weeks did anyone in the family obtain any (other) medicine directly from a doctor to take at home?	Y	N (Table M)
b. What is the name of the medicine? Enter name of medicine in col. (b) of Table M and ask: What condition is it for? Enter name of condition in col. (c) and reask 4a.		

- 1 Refer the respondent to the two-week calendar card when asking question 1a.
- 2 If a "Yes" response is received, ask 1b, "What is the name of the medicine?", circle the number "1" in column (a) of Table M and enter the name of the medicine in column (b). If the respondent does not know the name of the medicine, mark the "DK" box in column (b). In those cases where the respondent does not know the name of the medicine but offers to get the box or bottle and show you the label, copy the name of the medicine from the box or bottle to column (b).
- 3 Then ask, "What condition is it for?" and enter the response in column (c). Record the best description of the condition the respondent can give. If more than one condition is given, enter all mentioned. If the respondent does not know what the medicine is being taken for, enter "DK" in column (c) and record any additional information.

For column (c) we do not need complete diagnostic information, but we would like to get as concrete a description of the condition as possible. If the person is taking the medicine to prevent a condition, record that information; for example, "pills to avoid conception." After completing column (c), reask question 1a including the parenthetical "other" until a "No" response is received.

- 4 Questions 2, 3, and 4 are asked in the same manner as question 1. Include the parenthetical statements in questions 2a, 3a, and 4a if "Yes" responses are given in answer to any of the preceding questions.

Shot at 8590

200

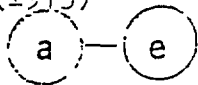


TABLE M: Complete columns d-k as appropriate for each prescription listed. If none listed, go to next page.

Line	Ques. No.	Enter name of medicine.	Enter name of condition and reask part a of appropriate question.	Was the -- obtained last week or the week before?	How was this medicine obtained -- through a written prescription, a refill, a call to the pharmacist from the doctor, given by the doctor to take at home, or was it obtained in some other way?
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
A	1 2 3 4	<input type="checkbox"/> DK		1 <input type="checkbox"/> Last week 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Week before 3 <input type="checkbox"/> In past 2 weeks, DK which 4 <input type="checkbox"/> In interview week (N/A) 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Before 2 weeks (N/A)	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Written prescription 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Refill 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Call to the pharmacist 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Given by Dr. to take at home 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Dr. recommended (not prescribed) 6 <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify

1 Columns (a), (b), and (c) are completed during the asking of questions 1-4 above the table. The appropriate number in column (a) must be circled based upon the question number source of the prescribed medicine.

2 When asking column (d), insert the name of the medicine given in column (b) in place of the dashes. If the name of the medicine was not known, "DK" in column (b), refer to the condition for which the medicine was taken, for example, "Was this medicine for your flu obtained last week or the week before?" Mark the "Last week" box or the "Week before" box, as appropriate. If the medicine was purchased both last week and the week before last, mark both boxes.

Mark "In past 2 weeks, D.K. which" if the respondent is uncertain of which week the medicine was obtained.

If you should learn that the medicine was bought or obtained only during interview week, or only before the two-week reference period, mark the appropriate box and skip to the next medicine reported.

3 Complete column (e) if the medicine was obtained "Last week," "Week before," or "In past 2 weeks, D.K. which."

If the medicine was obtained through a written prescription, a refill, a call to the pharmacist from the doctor, or given by the doctor to take at home, mark the appropriate box. If the medicine was not prescribed, but recommended by the doctor, mark the "Dr. recommended (not prescribed)" box. If the respondent tells you the medicine was a refill but was obtained by a call to the pharmacist from the doctor, or vice versa, mark the "Refill" box. If the medicine was received by any other means, mark the "Other" box and specify the method.

(f) — (k)

Columns (f)-(k)

(f) — (k)

Who was this prescribed for? Enter appropriate person number. (f)	During the past 2 weeks, how many different times was this medicine obtained? (g)	How much did or will you or your family pay for this medicine? If two or more times in col. (g), add: Include the total amount for the — times this medicine was obtained. (h)	Did or will any other source pay any of the bill for this medicine? (i)	What (other) source paid or will pay any part of this medicine? (j)	What was the total cost of this medicine, including the amount to be paid by all sources? (k)
Person No. _____	_____ Times	0000 <input type="checkbox"/> None (i) 9999 <input type="checkbox"/> DK Dollars Cents \$ _____	1 Y 2 N (NM) 9 DK (k)	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Free from doctor (NM) 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Private health insurance 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Medicare 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Welfare (incl. Medicaid) <input type="checkbox"/> Other — Specify ?	9999 <input type="checkbox"/> DK Dollars Cents \$ _____

- 1 Ask column (f), "Who was this prescribed for?" and enter the column number of the person reported by the respondent.
 - a Enter only the column number of the person for whom the medicine was prescribed, not those of all persons who may have taken the medicine. For example, a mother might obtain a prescription for her son for his bronchial congestion, and give some of the son's medicine to her daughter when she developed a similar condition. In such a case, only the column number of the son should be entered.
 - b If the respondent volunteers that a medicine was specifically prescribed for more than one person, enter the column numbers of all persons for whom the medicine was prescribed. It is extremely important that you be sure to enter the correct person numbers in this column since there will be no way to check the accuracy of this information, and consequently, no way of correcting errors which may arise in the recording of responses to column (f).
- 2 Enter in column (g) the number of separate times this medicine was obtained during the past two weeks.
- 3 In column (h) accept the respondent's estimate, entering the amount in dollars and cents. If two or more times is entered in column (g), include the second part of the question and insert the number of times from (g) for the dashes. The "amount" referred to is the cost to the family of the total amount of this particular medicine purchased during the past two weeks. "Family" means related household members.

CHAPTER 8. PREVENTIVE CARE PAGE

A General

- 1 These questions deal with the use of preventive care services. An attempt has been made to isolate specific preventive care measures which are recommended for each of four separate age groups.
- 2 Ask the appropriate questions on these pages according to each person's age.

S1 - S2

Items S1 and S2, What Questions to Ask

S1 - S2

S1	<input type="checkbox"/> Not SP (NP)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Eligible resp. avail. (S2)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Return call required (NP)
S2	<input type="checkbox"/> 40+ years (1)
	<input type="checkbox"/> 17-39 years (3)
	<input type="checkbox"/> 3-16 years (7)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Under 3 years (6)

- 1 Item S1 - Delete item S1 when you receive your assignment.
- 2 Item S2 - Mark one of these boxes, according to the person's age. Then follow the appropriate skip instruction.
 - a Ask questions 1-4 of all persons 40+ years of age.
 - b Ask questions 3 and 4 of all persons 17-39 years of age.
 - c Ask questions 5 and 6 only of females 17+ years of age.
 - d Ask questions 7-9 about children 3-16 years of age.
 - e Ask questions 8 and 9 about children under 3 years of age.

① — ③

Questions 1-3, How Long Since Electrocardiogram,
Glaucoma Test or Chest X-Ray

① — ③

1. About how long has it been since -- had an electrocardiogram, or EKG, which involves placing wires on the chest and arms?	1. 98 <input type="checkbox"/> Never 00 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 year ____ Years
2. About how long has it been since -- had a test for glaucoma - this is sometimes referred to as an eye pressure test?	2. 98 <input type="checkbox"/> Never 00 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 year ____ Years
3. About how long has it been since -- had a chest X-ray?	3. 98 <input type="checkbox"/> Never 00 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 year ____ Years

1. Question 1, How Long Since Electrocardiogram - An explanation of the term "electrocardiogram or EKG" is included in question 1. Mark the "Never" or "Less than 1 year" box or enter the number of years on the line provided. Ignore fractions of years—enter the number of full years only. For example, if a respondent says that it has been about 18 months or $1\frac{1}{2}$ years since he had an electrocardiogram, the correct entry would be 1; for $2\text{-}3/4$, the correct entry would be 2.
2. Question 2, How Long Since Glaucoma Test - An explanation of the term "glaucoma" is included in question 2. Mark the "Never" or "Less than 1 year" box or enter the number of years on the line provided. Ignore fractions of years—enter the number of full years only.
3. Question 3, How Long Since Chest X-Ray - Mark the "Never" or "Less than 1 year" box or enter the number of years on the line provided. Ignore fractions of years—enter the number of full years only.

957

Question 4, Eyeglasses or Contact Lenses

4a. Does -- have eyeglasses or contact lenses?	4a. 1 Y 2 N
b. About how long has it been since -- had his eyes examined to see if he needed (new) glasses?	b. SA <input type="checkbox"/> Never 00 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 year ____ Years

- 1 Question 4 determines whether the person uses eyeglasses or contact lenses, and the interval since the person's last eye examination. If, in answer to question 4a, the respondent volunteers which type of corrective lens he wears, treat it as a "Yes" response and do not record the type of lens. Circle "Y" even if the respondent volunteers that although he has eyeglasses or contact lenses, he does not use them.
- 2 When asking question 4b, include the word "new" if a "Yes" response was given in answer to question 4a.

5 — 6

Questions 5 and 6, Pap Smear or Breast Examination

5 — 6

Ask only of FEMALES 17+ years of age; otherwise, go to next person. 5. About how long has it been since -- had a Pap smear test for cancer?	5. 98 <input type="checkbox"/> Never 00 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 year ____ Years
6. About how long has it been since -- had a breast examination by a doctor?	6. 98 <input type="checkbox"/> Never 00 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 year ____ Years } (NP)

- 1 Ask questions 5 and 6 only of females aged 17 years or older. Go to the "next person" for males, and for females under 17 years of age.
- 2 Mark the "Never" or "Less than 1 year" box or enter the number of years on the line provided. Ignore fractions of years—enter the number of full years only.

7

Question 7, Eyeglasses or Contact Lenses

7

7a. Does -- have eyeglasses or contact lenses?	7a. 1 Y 2 N
b. About how long has it been since -- had his eyes examined to see if he needed (new) glasses? (Include any eye exams given in school.)	b. 00 <input type="checkbox"/> Never 00 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 year ____ Years

- 1 Start with question 7 for children aged 3 to 16 years old. This question determines whether the child uses eyeglasses or contact lenses, and the interval since his last eye examination. If, in answer to question 7a, the respondent volunteers which type of corrective lens the child wears, treat it as a "Yes" response and do not record the type of lens. Circle "Y" even if the respondent volunteers that although he has eyeglasses or contact lenses, he does not use them.
- 2 When asking question 7b, include the parenthetical phrase, "Include any eye exams given in school" for each child 6 years of age or older. Do not include this statement when asking about children under 6. Also include the word "new" if a "Yes" response was given to question 7a.

short at 9590

710

8

Question 8, Routine Physical Examination

8

8a. During the past 12 months, was -- taken to a doctor for a ROUTINE physical examination, that is, not for a particular illness but for a general checkup?	8a. 1 Y (9) 2 N
b. About how long has it been since -- was taken to a doctor for a routine physical examination or general checkup?	b. 38 <input type="checkbox"/> Never ____ Years

- 1 A routine physical examination, or general checkup, is defined as a visit to the doctor for the purpose of determining the general state of the person's health. This category includes checkups for specific purposes, such as periodic (yearly) checkups, visits to the well-baby clinic, and for other related purposes.
 - a However, a visit to a doctor for a checkup or examination for a specific condition, such as when a person goes for a checkup for tuberculosis or a heart condition, should not be classified as a routine physical examination. Also, a visit to a doctor solely for the purpose of receiving immunizations should not be counted as a routine physical examination.
 - b Do not probe to determine if the respondent is correctly reporting a routine physical examination; accept the respondent's answer unless he raises a question about it.
- 2 Ask question 8b only if a "No" response is given to question 8a. This question determines the interval of time since the person was taken to a doctor for a routine physical examination.

Question 9, First Saw Dentist

9. About how old was -- when you FIRST took him to a dentist?	9. <input type="checkbox"/> Never ____ Years old
---	---

- 1 Question 9 is designed to measure the age of children at the time of their first contact with a dentist. When asking this question, emphasize the word "FIRST."
- 2 What is wanted here is the age of the child at his first dental visit, not the interval of time since that first visit. If a respondent answers this question by giving an interval of time, probe to determine the age of the child at the time of the first visit and enter that on the "Years old" line.

Go to the "next person" after completing question 9 for this person.

HIS-100
(1973)

CHAPTER 9. MEDICAL CARE PAGE

A General

These pages will be stapled together when you receive your assignment.

① - ④ Questions 1-4, Place Saw Doctor (Continued)

① - ④

- 1) While Inpatient in Hospital - Any doctor's visit which occurred while the person was in a hospital overnight or longer.
- 2) Doctor's Office - The office of a doctor in private practice. This may be an office in the doctor's home, an individual office in an office building or a suite of offices occupied by several doctors. This category also includes "doctors clinic," meaning the offices of a group of doctors.
- 3) Telephone - A telephone call made to, or from a doctor or doctor's office which related to treatment or advice given by a doctor directly or transmitted through a nurse.
- 4) Hospital Outpatient Clinic - A unit of a hospital where persons may go for medical care without being admitted as an inpatient.
- 5) Home - Any place the person was staying at the time of the doctor's visit. It may be his own home, the home of a friend, a hotel room, etc.
- 6) Hospital Emergency Room - A unit of a hospital where persons may receive medical care, usually of an urgent nature, without or before being admitted as an inpatient.
- 7) Company or Industry Clinic - A company or plant doctor's office or clinic which is operated solely for the employees of that company or industry.
- 8) Other (Dispensaries, Community Health Centers, Etc.) - In the space provided, specify or give the best description of the place which you can obtain. Fill this space only if the "Other" box is marked.

Questions 5-7, Problems Getting Medical Care

		During the past 12 months has this usually been a problem when you wanted medical care for ---?	During the past 12 months did this problem ever delay you in getting medical care for ---?	During the past 12 months did this problem ever prevent you from getting medical care for ---?
		(1)	(2)	(3)
5a. During the past 12 months, (that is, since _____ (date) _____ a year ago), have you had any problem getting medical care for --- because no doctor was available when you needed one?	1 Y (Col. 1) 2 N (b)	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N
b. During the past 12 months, have you had any problem getting medical care for --- because you didn't have the money?	1 Y (Col. 1) 2 N (c)	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N
c. During the past 12 months, have you had any problem getting medical care for --- because you didn't know where to go?	1 Y (Col. 1) 2 N (d)	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N
d. During the past 12 months, have you had any problem getting medical care for --- because you didn't have a way to get to the doctor?.	1 Y (Col. 1) 2 N (e)	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N
6a. During the past 12 months, have you had any (other) problem making a doctor's appointment for ---?	1 Y (b) 2 N (7)			
b. What problem did you have?		1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N (Reask 6a)
		1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N (Reask 6a)
7a. During the past 12 months, have you had any other problem getting medical care for ---?	1 Y (b) 2 N (8)			
b. What problem did you have?		1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N (Reask 7a)
		1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N (Reask 7a)

- 1 Ask question 5a inserting the 12-month reference date, the first time and any time thereafter you feel it necessary. If the answer is "No," circle "N" and go to 5b.
 - a If the response to 5a is "Yes," circle "Y" and ask the questions in columns (1), (2), and (3) and circle "Y" or "N" as appropriate.
 - b After completing column (3), ask question 5b and continue in the same manner until all parts of question 5 have been asked.

- 2 Ask question 6 after all appropriate columns of question 5 have been completed. If the response is "No," go to question 7.
 - a If the response is "Yes," ask question 6b and enter the problem on the first line of the second column. Then ask the questions in columns (1), (2), and (3) and circle "Y" or "N" as appropriate.
 - b After completing column (3) for the first problem, reask question 6a including the word "other" to determine if the person has had any other problem making a doctor's appointment. If the answer is "Yes," ask 6b, enter the problem in the second space of the next column and ask columns (1), (2), and (3) about this problem. Continue to reask question 6a until a final "No" is received and then go to question 7.

FIS-100
(1973)

⑤ - ⑦ Questions 5-7, Problems Getting Medical Care (Continued)

⑤ - ⑦

c If more than two problems are reported, draw a line across the page to divide the columns and proceed as instructed above.

3 Ask and complete question 7 in the same manner as question 6.

8

Question 8, Getting Enough Medical Care

8

8a. In general, do you feel that -- is getting as much medical care as he needs?	1 Y (9) 2 N
b. Please look at this card. (Hand Card D to respondent.) Which of the reasons on that card explain why -- isn't getting enough medical care? (Circle all reasons given.)	1 2 3 4 5 6 - Specify 7

- 1 Ask question 8a to determine if the respondent feels he is getting as much medical care as he needs and if not, the reasons why he feels this is so. If the response is "Yes," circle "Y" and go to question 9.
- 2 Ask question 8b if the answer to 8a is "No." Hand the respondent Card D and circle the number or numbers that correspond to the reason(s) given. If the reason is other than numbers 1-5, circle 6 and specify the reason given. The answer should be in reference to the sample person.

9 - 10

Questions 9-10, Importance of Factors in Medical Care

9 - 10

If under 19 years of age, go to RS, otherwise ask:		Very important	Somewhat important	Not important	
9. Some things are more important than others in medical care. We are interested in how you feel about the importance of certain things related to the medical care you receive. (Hand Card M to respondent.) Please tell me which of the statements on that card apply to each of the following questions.		(1)	(2)	(3)	
a.	How important to you is it that the office hours are convenient?				
b.	How important to you is it that the doctor knows your name?				
c.	How important to you is it that the doctor explains things in a way you can understand?				
d.	How important to you is the amount the doctor charges?				
e.	How important to you is it that the doctor's staff is courteous?				
f.	How important to you is the amount of time it takes to get to the doctor's office?				
g.	How important is it that you can get an appointment when you want one?				
h.	How important to you is the amount of time you have to wait when you visit the doctor?				
i.	How important to you is the amount of time the doctor is willing to spend with you?				
j.	How important to you is the amount of time you have to pay the bill?				
10a. Please look at this card. (Hand Card I (2-3-4) to respondent.) In relation to the medical care you receive, which of those statements do you feel is the most important to you?		Card 1 (A-O)	Card 2 (E-H)	Card 3 (I-L)	Card 4 (M-P)
		(b)	(b)	(b)	(b)
b. Which statement is the next most important to you?		(b)	(b)	(b)	(b)
		(10a)	(10a)	(10a)	

1. Ask questions 9 and 10 only if the person is 19 years of age or over. These questions ask the respondent to indicate the degree of importance he attaches to various factors related to the medical care he receives.

If a proxy respondent is used, questions 9 and 10 refer to the proxy respondent's opinion regarding the medical care he receives.

a. Question 9 - Read the introduction, hand the respondent Card M, and place a checkmark (✓) in either the "Very important," "Somewhat important," or "Not important" column across from question 9a as indicated by the respondent. Continue by asking and recording the responses to questions 9b-j in the same manner. Repeat the introduction whenever you feel it necessary.

- 1) Make sure the respondent is answering in terms of the importance of the question, not whether or not the question is true. For example, if the answer to "How important to you is it that the office hours are convenient?" is "Yes, the hours are convenient," the question has not been answered. Reask the question, emphasizing "How important to you is it ...?"
- b Question 10 - After reading the statement "Please look at this card," hand the respondent Card 1 and continue with the rest of the question. Enter the letter as indicated by the respondent on the first line of the Card 1 column. Then ask 10b and enter the reported letter on the next line of this column and reask 10b again.

NOTE: There are only answer spaces for three responses. By implication, the one not selected is the least important of the four statements on each card.

- 1) Next hand the respondent Card 2, reask question 10a, and continue in the same manner as for Card 1. Repeat this procedure for Cards 3 and 4. Then go to item RS.



Item RS, Respondent



<p>RS PREVENTIVE CARE AND MEDICAL CARE PAGES</p>	<p>Show who responded for the Preventive Care and Medical Care Pages. If other than self respondent, show who responded for him.</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Responded for self Person _____ was respondent</p>
	<p>If other than self respondent, give reason for accepting a proxy.</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Under 19 <input type="checkbox"/> Mentally Incompetent <input type="checkbox"/> Physically Inconsistent <input type="checkbox"/> Away from home during interview period</p>

- 1 Item RS is used to identify the respondent for the Preventive and Medical Care pages. Mark item RS as follows:
 - a Responded for Self - Mark this box if the sample person responded for these pages for himself.
 - b If the Sample Person Was Not a Self Respondent - Enter the column number of the person who did respond and mark the box that describes the reason why a proxy respondent was accepted.

CHAPTER 10. PREGNANCY PAGE

PREGNANCY

INTERVIEWER
CHECK ITEM:

No Females 17-44 yrs. old (Next page)
 1+ Females 17-44 yrs. old (1)

A Pregnancy, General

- 1 These questions obtain detailed information about preventive care measures undertaken during and after pregnancies which ended during the 12-month period prior to the interview date. The past 12 months is the date entered in "Dentist and doctor visit probe" in item C2.
- 2 Ask the questions on this page if at least one person in the family is a female between the ages of 17 and 44. Look at the age and sex of each family member listed on the questionnaire in order to determine if these questions should be asked. If there are no females in the family between 17 and 44 years of age, mark the "No females 17-44 years old" box and go to the next page. If the family consists of one or more females between the ages of 17 and 44, mark the "1+ Females 17-44 years old" box and ask question 1a.
- 3 Complete question 1 for all females aged 17-44 before going to question 2. Then complete question 2 for each person with "Was pregnant" marked in 1b before going to the next female who reported a pregnancy during the past 12 months.
- 4 After completing question 2 for all appropriate persons, complete a line of Table P for each pregnancy reported on the "Pregnancies" line in question 2b. If no pregnancies have been recorded on this line, go to page 40 and continue the interview with question 33.

Complete all necessary columns of the first line of Table P for the first pregnancy reported in question 2b before completing any other lines for other females in the family. Make a checkmark to the right of the number of pregnancies in question 2b as you complete each line of Table P. This will ensure that all reported pregnancies are accounted for.

①

Question 1, Pregnant in Past 12 Months

①

1a. During the past 12 months, has anyone in the family been pregnant or had a miscarriage?	Y	N (Next page)	
b. Who is this? Mark "Was pregnant" box in person's column.	lb.		<input type="checkbox"/> Was pregnant
c. During the past 12 months, has anyone else in the family been pregnant or had a miscarriage?	Y (Reask lb and c)	N	

1 Question 1a determines if any female family members between the ages of 17 and 44 have been pregnant or had a miscarriage during the past 12 months. Ask the question as worded even though the family may contain only one female aged 17-44 and even though that female is the respondent. If a respondent indicates a person under 17 or over 44 has been pregnant or had a miscarriage during the past 12 months, do not ask any of the remaining questions on this page for this person. If the answer to question 1a is "No," go to the next page.

a Although most people will answer either "Yes" or "No" to this question, the respondent may tell you that she or some other person in the family may have been pregnant but she doesn't know for sure. If this happens, circle "N" in question 1a and go to the next page.

2 If a "Yes" response is received to question 1a, ask question 1b to find out which persons were pregnant during the past 12 months. Mark the "Was pregnant" box in the appropriate column for each person who was pregnant.

3 Ask question 1c as a reminder to the respondent to report any other family members who were pregnant during the past 12 months. If the answer to 1c is "Yes," reask 1b and mark the "Was pregnant" box in that person's column. Continue to reask 1b and 1c until you get a final "No" to 1c. Then go to question 2.

2

Question 2, How Many Times Pregnant

2

If "Was pregnant," ask:		2a.	Y	N
2a.	Is -- now pregnant? (Not counting --'s current pregnancy)		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b.	During the past 12 months, how many times has -- been pregnant, including miscarriages? (Not counting --'s current pregnancy)		<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) -- <input type="text"/> Pregnancies	
c.	How many times has -- EVER been pregnant, including miscarriages?		01 <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Once (NP)
			<input type="text"/> Pregnancies	
d.	How many of these -- pregnancies resulted in live births?		00 <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)
			<input type="text"/> Live births (NP)	

- Questions 2a-d are asked as a block for each female aged 17-44 for whom you have marked the "Was pregnant" box in question 1b. Ask question 2a to determine if the woman is now pregnant. Circle "Y" or "N" as appropriate.
- Question 2b determines the number of times the woman has been pregnant or had a miscarriage during the past 12 months. If "Y" is circled in 2a for this person, include the parenthetical phrase "Not counting --'s current pregnancy" when asking question 2b. Mark the "None" box or enter the number of pregnancies on the line inside the box provided in the answer space.
- Ask question 2c if you have entered a number in question 2b to determine the number of times the woman has EVER been pregnant. Again include the parenthetical phrase if "Y" is circled in 2a for her. If the answer to 2c is "Once," mark that box and go to the next female reporting a pregnancy during the past 12 months.
- Ask question 2d if two or more pregnancies are entered in question 2c to determine the total number of children born alive to this woman. Insert the number entered on the "Pregnancies" line in 2c when asking 2d. Then ask question 2a for the next woman reporting a pregnancy during the past 12 months.

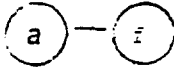


Table P, Columns (a)-(f)

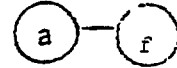


TABLE P: Complete a line of Table P for each terminated pregnancy reported in Q. 2b. If no terminated pregnancies reported, go to next page.

Person Number (a)	Did --'s (last pregnancy, pregnancy before that) end in a full-term live birth, a premature live birth, a miscarriage, or what? (b)	Did she see a doctor at any time during that pregnancy? (c)	How many months pregnant was -- when she first saw a doctor? (d)	About how many visits did -- make to a doctor BEFORE that pregnancy ended? (e)	Did a doctor ever tell -- to remain in bed for two weeks or more during that pregnancy? (f)
	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 Full term <input type="checkbox"/> 2 Premature <input type="checkbox"/> 3 Miscarriage <input type="checkbox"/> 4 Stillbirth <input type="checkbox"/> 5 Abortion <input type="checkbox"/> 6 Other - Specify _____	1 Y 2 N (g)	_____ Months	_____ Visits	1 Y 2 N

- Complete a line of Table P for each pregnancy reported in question 2b. Make a checkmark (✓) to the right of the number in question 2b as you complete each line to insure that all pregnancies are accounted for.
- Enter in column (a) the person number of the first woman reported as having had a pregnancy in question 2b.

If you complete a line of the table for another pregnancy for the same woman, repeat her person number before filling columns (b)-(j).

- Record the outcome of the pregnancy in column (b). Accept whatever answer the respondent gives to column (b), but if a question is raised, use the following definitions as a guide for recording the answer:

Full-term live birth: The child is born alive and weighs $5\frac{1}{2}$ pounds or more.

Premature live birth: The child is born alive but weighs less than $5\frac{1}{2}$ pounds.

Miscarriage: A pregnancy which ends by the spontaneous expulsion from the uterus of a dead fetus before the woman has been pregnant 20 weeks. Spontaneous abortion is included in this category.

Stillbirth: A pregnancy which ends in the birth of a dead child after the woman has been pregnant 20 weeks.

Abortion: The induced expulsion from the uterus of a dead fetus before the completion of 20 weeks of pregnancy.

If you are unsure how to classify the terminated pregnancy, mark the "Other" box and explain the circumstances on the line provided.

(a) - (f) Table P, Columns (a)-(f) (Continued)

(a) - (f)

- a When asking column (b) for the first pregnancy reported for any woman in the family, use the phrase "last pregnancy." When asking this question about any other pregnancy for this woman, refer to the phrase, "the pregnancy before that." In other words, a line in Table P will be completed first for a woman's most recent pregnancy, and then for her next-to-last one, and so forth, until all of her pregnancies reported in question 2b as occurring during the past 12 months have been accounted for on individual lines of Table P.
- 4 "During" in column (c) refers to the time preceding the actual time of delivery or miscarriage. If, for example, the first time the woman saw a doctor was when she delivered or right after she had the miscarriage, the "N" should be circled.
- 5 Ask the questions in columns (d)-(f) only if a "Yes" response is given in column (c).
 - a Column (d) determines the number of whole months the woman was pregnant before she saw a doctor about this pregnancy. If the respondent does not know for sure, accept the best estimate.
 - b Column (e) asks about the total number of doctor visits which occurred during the pregnancy. When asking this question, emphasize the word "Before." The number of visits recorded in column (e) should only include visits that were made in connection with the pregnancy. They should not include any visits that were made for illnesses not related to the pregnancy or visits at delivery or afterwards.
 - c Column (f) separates those pregnancies which involved complications and refers to the period of time before the pregnancy ended. Periods of bed confinement which may have occurred after pregnancies ended should not be included in this question.

(g) — (j)

Columns (g)-(j)

(g) — (j)

How many months pregnant was -- when that pregnancy ended? (g)	Did -- have a check-up a month or two after that pregnancy ended? (h)	How long has it been since that pregnancy ended? (i)	Does -- intend to have a check-up for that pregnancy? (j)
____ Months	1 Y (NP) 2 N	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 2 months 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 2+ months (NP)	1 Y 2 N

1 Ask column (g) and enter the number of whole months.

2 A "checkup" in column (h) refers to the examination usually made by a medical doctor one or two months after a delivery or miscarriage to make sure the woman's recovery is satisfactory.

If a "Yes" response is received to this question, circle "Y" and complete a line of Table P for the next pregnancy, if any, or go to the next page.

3 Ask column (i) if "N" is circled in column (h) to obtain the interval of time since the pregnancy ended. For the most part, this question is included in order to assist in deciding whether to ask column (j), which asks if the woman intends to have a checkup for the pregnancy.

If the "2+ months" box is marked, complete a line of Table P for the next pregnancy, if any, or go to the next page.

4 Ask column (j) only for pregnancies which ended less than two months ago. Since the pregnancy ended so recently, some women may not yet have gone for their scheduled checkup. Here we find out whether the woman intends to have a medical checkup in connection with the pregnancy. Circle "Y" or "N" as appropriate.

After marking column (j), complete a line of Table P for the next pregnancy, if any, or go to the next page.

CHAPTER 11. PERSON PAGES

A General

Person pages 40 and 41 obtain information about blood donations, education and veteran status. Pages 42 and 43 obtain information about work status during the past two weeks, income and marital status.

- 1 Ask question 33a for each person 17+ beginning with the first person listed. If the person is under 17 years of age, mark the "Under 17" box in 33a and leave questions 33b and c blank.
- 2 Ask questions 34 and 35 as a block for each person 17+ before going to the next person. If the person is under 17 years of age, mark "Under 17" in 34a and leave questions 34b-35b blank.
- 3 Ask questions 36 and 37 as a block for each person 17+ before going to the next person. If the person is under 17, mark the "Under 17" box in 36a and leave questions 36b and 37 blank.
- 4 Next ask questions 38-40 before going to question 41.
- 5 Then ask questions 41 and 42 as a block for each person 17+ before going to the next person.

Question 33, Blood Donors

If 17 years old or over, ask:		0 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
33a. During the past 12 months, has -- given or sold any blood to a blood bank, a hospital, the Red Cross, or anywhere else?	33a.	1 Y 2 N (NP)
b. During the past 12 months, how many times has -- given or sold his blood?	b.	_____ Times
For each donation reported in Q. 33b, ask:	(Last time)	1 2 3 4 5 - Specify
c. Which of the reasons listed on this card (Hand Card B) best describes why -- gave blood (the last time, the time before that, etc.)?	c.	1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____

- 1 Ask questions 33a-c as a block for each person 17+ years of age. Mark the "Under 17" box for each child under 17 years of age, and go to the next person.
 - a Question 33a determines whether the person has given or sold any blood during the 12-month period prior to the interview. Circle the "Y" or "N" as appropriate. If the "N" is circled, go to the next person.
 - b Ask question 33b if "Y" is circled in question 33a to determine the number of times that the person gave or sold blood. Enter the response on the line provided and ask question 33c next.
 - c Question 33c obtains information about the reasons for persons giving or selling blood. Ask this question for each donation entered in 33b. If only one donation is reported, say "Which of the reasons listed on this card (hand Card B) best describes why you gave blood?" If more than one donation is reported, add the parenthetical phrase "the last time" for the most recent donation and "the time before that" for each preceding donation. Continue to ask the question until all donations are accounted for.
 - 1) Space is provided for four separate donations. Fill the space labeled "1 (last)" first, then "2," etc.

If there are more than four donations, indicate this in the question area of question 33c by an entry, such as "donation 5-- person 4--(3)."
 - 2) Circle the number of the reason given in the appropriate answer space. If the response is "some other reason," circle 5 and enter the reason on the "Specify" line.

Question 34, Education

34

34

If 17 years old or over, ask:			
34a. What is the highest grade or year -- attended in school?	34a.	<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)	
		<input type="checkbox"/> None (35)	
		Elem: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	
		High: 9 10 11 12	
		College: 1 2 3 4 5 6+	
b. Did -- finish the -- grade (year)?		b.	1 Y 2 N

- 1 Circle only one number to report the answer to this question. Thus, if the highest grade or year a person attended is the junior year of high school, circle the "11" opposite "High." Circle the highest grade attended regardless of "skipped" or "repeated" grades.
- 2 Regular School - Count only grades attended in a regular school where persons are given formal education in graded public or private schools, whether day or night school, and whether attendance was full time or part time. A "regular" school is one which advances a person toward an elementary or high school diploma or a college, university or professional school degree.
 - a If the respondent tells you he did graduate from high school but that "they only had 11 years of school back then," ask if he received a high school diploma. If "Yes," circle the "12" opposite "High" and circle "Y" in 34b. If "No," circle the "11" opposite "High" and circle "Y" in 34b.
 - b If a person volunteers that he completed college in less than four years and he obtained a degree (graduated), circle "4" opposite "College" and circle "Y" in 34b. If the person did not graduate or receive a college degree, the entry in question 34a should be the actual number of years he attended college, and question 34b should be asked and marked accordingly.
 - c If a person volunteers that he completed four years of college but did not get a degree because he was enrolled in a five-year program, such as engineering, circle "4" opposite "College" in question 34a and "Y" in question 34b. If a person completed the fifth year of a five-year degree program and received a bachelor's degree, then circle "5" opposite "College" in question 34a and "Y" in 34b.

d Also, persons may attend professional schools (law, medicine, dentistry) after less than four years of college. When the respondent answers in terms of these schools, obtain the equivalent in college years. For nurses, ask to determine the exact grade attended. If a nurse received her training in a college, determine grade attended in college. However, if training was received at a nurses school or hospital training school and did not advance the person towards a regular college degree, determine grade attended at the last regular school.

- 3 Nonregular School - Do not count education or training received in nonregular schools, such as vocational, trade or business schools, outside the regular school system. For example, barber colleges, beautician schools, citizenship schools, and dancing schools are not to be counted; likewise, do not count training received "on the job," or service sponsored or correspondence school training unless it is given by a regular school and is credited toward a school diploma or college degree.
- 4 Junior High School - If the highest grade a person has attended is in a junior high school, determine the number of years attended and record the grade as if it has been in a school system with eight years of elementary school and four years of high school.
- 5 Postgraduate Schooling - For persons who have attended postgraduate high school but have not attended a regular college, circle the "12" opposite "High."
 For those with postgraduate college training, circle the ^{"5 or 6"} "5" opposite "College." as appropriate
- 6 Other School Systems - If the person attended school in a foreign country, in an ungraded school, under a tutor, or under other special circumstances, give the nearest equivalent of his highest grade attended or the number of years of attendance.
- 7 No Schooling - For persons who have not attended school at all, mark the "None" box and go to question 35a.
- 8 Question 34b, Grade (Year) Finished - Ask question 34b for all persons who are shown in question 34a as having attended school. Circle "Y" if the person has completed the entire grade or academic year entered in question 34a; circle "N" if the person did not finish the grade or year. For example, a person may have completed only a half year or he may have failed to "pass" the grade.
- a Note that the entry in question 34b for a person who may be currently enrolled in the regular school system would be "N." For example, a 17-year-old boy enrolled in the fourth year of high school would have "12" circled opposite "High" in question 34a, but since he would not yet have completed this grade, "N" would be circled in question 34b.
- b For a person with ^{"5 or 6"} "5" circled opposite "College" in question 34a, circle "Y" in question 34b, if he has gone through one or more postgraduate academic college years, without asking question 34b.

Question 35, Service in Armed Forces

35

35

Ask for all males 17 years or over:		35a	2 Y	1 N (NP)
35a. Did <u> </u> ever serve in the Armed Forces of the United States?				
b. When did he serve?			b.	
Circle code in descending order of priority. Thus if person served in Vietnam and in Korea, circle VN.		Vietnam Era (Aug. '64 to present)	VN	4 WWI
		Korean War (June '50-Jan. '55)	KW	3 GS
		World War II (Sept. '40-July '47)	WWII	2 DK
		World War I (April '17-Nov. '18)	WWI	
		Other Service (all other periods)	OS	

- 1 Ask question 35 on service in the Armed Forces only of males 17 years old and over. For females, go to question 36.
 - a Armed Forces - U.S. Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine Corps or Coast Guard and any National Guard Unit which was activated as part of the regular Armed Forces.
 - b Armed Forces Service—"Active Duty" - Included in "active duty" is the six-month period a young man may serve in connection with the provisions of the Reserve Forces Act of 1955. Count persons in the reserve who have served on the six-month active duty program as having been on active duty in the Armed Forces. Persons who are in this program but only attend weekly reserve meetings, summer camp or the like and have not completed the six-month program, have not been on "active duty."
 - c Exclude as service in the Armed Forces, persons working in civilian positions for the Armed Forces, serving in the Merchant Marine or, serving in a National Guard Unit not activated as part of the regular Armed Forces.

- 2 Accept the respondent's answer to question 35b regarding the period or periods of service in the Armed Forces. However, if a question is raised as to what dates are covered by a given war, use the following:
 - World War I - April 1917 to November 1918
 - World War II - September 1940 to July 1947
 - Korean War - June 1950 to January 1955
 - Vietnam Era - August 1964 to present

- a Circle one of the codes listed in 35b based on the following rules:
- 1) If the person served any time during the four major conflicts of this century, that is, the Vietnam Era, the Korean War, World War II or World War I, circle the code for the most recent wartime service, regardless of any peacetime service.
 - 2) If the person served in more than one of these major wars, circle the code for the most recent war period, for example, "VN" for service in both Vietnam and the Korean War, "KW" for service in both the Korean War and World War II, or "WWII" for service in both the second and the first world wars.
 - 3) For persons who served in a time period other than those noted above, circle "OS" for "Other Service (All other periods)." The "OS" code also covers service in such earlier conflicts as the Spanish-American War, the Boxer Rebellion or the Philippine Insurrection.

36

Question 36, Work Status in Past Two Weeks

36

If 17 years old or over, ask:		<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
36a. Did -- work at any time last week or the week before - (For females): not counting work around the house?	36a.	1. Y <input type="checkbox"/> 2. N <input type="checkbox"/>
b. Even though -- did not work during these 2 weeks, does he have a job or business?	b.	1. Y <input type="checkbox"/> 2. N <input type="checkbox"/>
c. Was he looking for work or on layoff from a job?	c.	1. Y <input type="checkbox"/> 2. N <input type="checkbox"/> (3)
d. Which - looking for work or on layoff from a job?	d.	1. <input type="checkbox"/> Looking 3. <input type="checkbox"/> Both 2. <input type="checkbox"/> Layoff

- 1 Question 36a. Worked Last Week or Week Before - Ask question 36a for each person 17 years old or over. Circle "Y" in 36a for a person who worked at any time last week or the week before, even for an hour.
 - a Work - Paid work as an employee for someone else for wages, salary, commission or pay "in kind" (meals, living quarters, or supplies provided in place of cash wages). Also, include work in the person's own business, professional practice or farm and work without pay in a business or farm run by a related household member.
 - b Exclude work around the house, volunteer or unpaid work, such as for church, Red Cross, or charity, and service in the Armed Forces.

- 2 Question 36b. With a Job or Business - Ask question 36b if "N" is circled in 36a. When questions arise, consider as having a job or business a person who was temporarily absent from his job or business all of last week and the week before because of vacation, bad weather, labor dispute, or personal reasons, such as illness, but who expects to return when these events are ended. Also, circle "Y" for a person who says that he has a new job which he has not yet started, but enter a footnote, "New job—not yet started."
 - a Job - A definite arrangement with one or more employers to work for pay, full-time or part-time.
 - b On Call - A person "on call" to work only when his services are needed is not considered to have a job during weeks when he does not work. For example, a substitute teacher who did not work last week or the week before.

- c Seasonal - Seasonal employment is considered a job only during the season and not during the off-season.
- 3 Question 36c, Looking for Work or on Layoff - Ask question 36c regardless of the answer to question 36b. The reason for this is that a person who is not working but considers himself as having a job may actually be on temporary layoff or looking for a job, and we want to provide such persons an opportunity to say whether this is so. Circle "Y" if the respondent's answer indicates that the person was either looking for work or on layoff or both.
- a Looking for Work - Any effort to get a job or to establish a business or profession. A person was looking for work if he actually tried to find work during the past two weeks and also, if he made such efforts within the past 60 days, and was waiting during the past two weeks to hear the results of these earlier efforts. Some examples of looking for work are: Registering at an employment office; visiting, telephoning, or writing applications to prospective employers; placing or answering advertisements for a job; and being "on call" at a personnel office or at a union hiring hall, etc.
- b Layoff - Waiting to be called back to a job from which he has been temporarily laid off or furloughed. Layoffs can be due to slack work, plant retooling or remodeling, seasonal factors, and the like. If a person was not working because of a labor dispute at his own place of employment, he is not considered "on layoff" but with a job from which he is absent.
- 4 Question 36d, Which, Looking or on Layoff - If the answer to question 36c is "Yes," ask question 36d and mark the appropriate answer, that is, "Looking," "Layoff," or "Both" as indicated by the respondent's answer.

- 4 Question 37a, Name of Employer - Ask question 37a, and enter the name of the company, business, government agency, or other employer. Do not use abbreviations in question 37a unless that is all the respondent can give you for the name of the employer. For persons who work for employers without company names, such as a farm, a dentist or lawyer's office, etc., write the name of the owner. Persons working for various private employers, such as baby sitters, domestics, etc., should be reported as "private families."
- a Government - For employees of a government agency, record the specific organization and state whether the organization is Federal (U.S.), State, county, etc. For example, U.S. Treasury Department, State Highway Police, City Tax Office, etc. It is not sufficient to report merely U.S. Government or Police Dept., etc.
- b Self-employed - If the person for whom you are obtaining the information is self-employed, ask if the place of business or establishment has a name (such as Twin City Barber Shop, Capitol Construction, etc.), and write it in 37a. If there is no business name, write "self-employed," "own business," etc.
- 5 Question 37c, Kind of Business or Industry - Do not repeat the name of the employer in this entry. Question 37c should tell clearly and specifically what the company or business does at the location where the person works.
- a In order to give a clear and exact description of the industry, the entry must state or indicate both a general and a specific function for the employer, for example, copper mine, fountain pen manufacturer, wholesale grocery, retail bookstore, road construction, shoe repair service. The words mine, manufacturer, wholesale, retail, construction, and repair service show the general function. The words fountain pen, grocery, bookstore, road, and shoe indicate the specific function.
- b Avoid Use of the Word "Company" - Do not use the word "company" in this entry. It does not give useful information. If the respondent reports that he works for a furniture company, ask "Do they manufacture or do they just sell it?" If they just sell it, ask "Do they sell to other stores (which would be wholesale) or to individuals (which would be retail)?" Accordingly, in such a case the possible replies would be "furniture manufacturer," "furniture wholesaler," or "furniture retailer."

37b

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

37b

- c Multiple Activity Businesses - Some firms carry on more than one kind of business or industrial activity. If the activities are carried on at the same location, describe only the major activity of the establishment. For example, employees in a retail salesroom, located at the factory of a company primarily engaged in the manufacturing of men's clothing, should be reported as working in "Men's clothing manufacturing."
- 1) If the different activities are carried on at separate locations, describe the activity where the person works. For example, a coal mine owned by a large steel manufacturer should be reported as "coal mine," the separate paint factory of a large chemical manufacturer should be reported as "paint manufacturing."
 - 2) A few specified activities, when carried on at separate locations, are exceptions to the above. The activity of the parent organization should be recorded for research laboratories, warehouses, repair shops, and storage garages, when these kinds of establishments exist primarily to serve their own parent organizations rather than the public or other organizations. For example, if a retail department store has a separate warehouse for its own use, the entry for the warehouse employees should be "retail department store" rather than "warehouse."
- d Distinguish Among Manufacturing, Wholesale, Retail and Service - It is essential to distinguish among manufacturing, wholesale, retail, and service companies. Even though a manufacturing plant sells its products in large lots to other manufacturers, wholesalers, or retailers, it should be reported as a manufacturing company. Use the following as a guide:
- 1) A wholesale establishment buys, rather than makes products in large quantities for resale to retailers, industrial users, or to other wholesalers.
 - 2) A retailer sells primarily to individual consumers or users but seldom makes products.

37b

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

37b

- 3) Establishments which render services to individuals and to organizations, such as, hotels, laundries, cleaning and dyeing shops, advertising agencies, and automobile repair shops are engaged in providing services. They should not be reported as retailers but should show the type of services provided, for example, TV and radio repair.
- e Manufacturers' Sales Offices - A separate sales office set up by a manufacturing firm to sell to other business organizations and located away from the factory or headquarters of the firm is recorded as "(product) manufacturers' sales office." For example, a St. Louis shoe factory has a sales office in Chicago; "shoe manufacturers sales office" is the correct entry for workers in the Chicago office.
- f Government Organization - Usually the name of the government agency is adequate, for example, U.S. Census Bureau, City Fire Department.
- 1) If the activity of the government agency is absolutely clear, the name of the agency is sufficient. In such cases, enter "Same as above" in 37b. However, sometimes the names of government agencies are not fully descriptive of their business or activity. A correct entry in 37b for a County Highway Commission might be one or any combination of the following: "County road building," "county road repair," "county contracting for road building (or repair)." For State Liquor Control Board, the correct entry might be "State licensing of liquor sales" or "State liquor retailer."
 - 2) If the business or main activity of a government employer is not clear, you should ask in what part of the organization the person works and then report that activity. For example, for a City Department of Public Works, a correct entry might be one of the following: "City street repair," "city garbage collection," "city sewage disposal" or "city water supply."

37b

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

37b

- g Business in Own Homes - Some people carry on businesses in their own homes. Report these businesses as if they were carried on in regular stores or shops. For example, dressmaking shop, lending library, retail antique furniture store, insurance agency, piano teaching, boarding house, rest home, boarding children (for a foster home), etc.
- h Domestic and Other Private Household Workers - When the name of a single individual is given as the employer, find out whether the person works at a place of business or in a private home. The proper industry entry for a domestic worker employed in the home of another person is "private home."
- i Examples of Adequate Entries for Question 37b - The following are some examples of inadequate and adequate entries for kind of business and industry (question 37b). Study them carefully and refer to them periodically to familiarize yourself with the types of entries that are proper and adequate.

Inadequate

Adequate

Agency	Collection agency, advertising agency, real estate agency, employment agency, travel agency, insurance agency.
Bakery	Wholesale bakery (sells to grocers, restaurants, hotels, etc.), retail bakery (sells only to private individuals).
Box factory	Paper box factory, wooden box factory, metal box factory.
Club, private club	Golf club, fraternal club, night club, residence club, boarding house.
Coal company	Coal mine, retail coal yard, wholesale coal yard.
Credit company	Credit rating service, loan service, retail clothing store (sometimes called a credit company).

InadequateAdequate

Dairy

Dairy farm, dairy depot, dairy bar, dairy products—wholesale, dairy products—retail, dairy products—manufacturing.

Engineering
company

Engineering consulting firm, general contracting, wholesale heating equipment, construction machinery factory.

Express
company

Motor freight, railway express agency, railroad car rental (for Union Tank Car Company, etc.), armored car service.

Factory, mill
or plant

Steel rolling mill, hardware factory, aircraft factory, flour mill, hosiery mill, commercial printing plant.

Foundry

Iron foundry, brass foundry, aluminum foundry.

Fur company

Fur dressing plant, fur garment factory, retail fur store, fur wholesaler, fur repair shop.

Laundry

- (a) Own home laundry (for a person doing laundry for pay in her own home).
- (b) Laundering for private family (for a person working in the home of a private family).
- (c) Commercial laundry (for a person working in a steam laundry, hand laundry, Chinese laundry, French laundry or similar establishment).
- (d) Self-service laundry (for a person working in an establishment where the customer brings her own laundry and pays a fee to use the washing machine or other equipment).

(37b)

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

(37b)

Inadequate

Adequate

Lumber
company

Sawmill, retail lumber yard, planing mill,
logging camp, lumber manufacturer.

Mine

Coal mine, gold mine, bauxite mine, iron
mine, copper mine, lead mine, marble quarry,
sand and gravel pit.

Nylon factory

Nylon chemical factory (where chemicals are
made into fibers), nylon textile mill (where
fibers are made into yarn or woven into
cloth), women's nylon hosiery factory (where
yarn is made into hosiery).

Office

Dentist's office, physician's office, public
stenographer's office, life insurance agency.

Oil company

Oil drilling, petroleum refinery, retail
gasoline station, petroleum pipeline,
wholesale oil distributor.

Packing house

Meat packing plant, fruit cannery, fruit
packing shed (wholesale packers and shippers).

Pipeline

Natural gas pipeline, gasoline pipeline,
petroleum pipeline, pipeline construction.

Plastic
factory

Plastic materials factory (where plastic
materials are made), plastic products plant
(where articles are actually manufactured
from plastic materials).

Public
utility

Electric light and power utility, gas
utility, telephone utility, water supply.

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

37b

37b

Inadequate

Adequate

Railroad car shop

Railroad car factory, railroad repair shop, street railroad repair shop.

Rayon factory

Rayon chemical factory (where chemicals are made into fibers), rayon textile mills (where fibers are made into yarn or woven into cloth), rayon dress manufacturing (where cloth is made into garments).

Repair shop

Shoe repair shop, radio repair shop, blacksmith shop, welding shop, auto repair shop, machine repair shop.

School

City elementary school, private kindergarten, private college, State university etc. Distinguish between public and private, including parochial, and identify the highest level of instruction provided, such as junior college, senior high school.

Tailor shop

Tailoring and cleaning shop (provides a valet service), custom tailor shop (makes clothes to customers' order), men's retail clothing store.

Terminal

Bus terminal, railroad terminal, boat terminal, truck terminal, airport.

Textile mill

Cotton cloth mill, woolen cloth mill, cotton yarn mill, rayon thread mill.

Transportation company

Motor trucking, moving and storage, water transportation, airline, street railway, taxicab service, subway, elevated railway, railroad, petroleum pipeline, car loading service.

(37b) (37c) Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

(37b) (37c)

Inadequate

Adequate

Water company

Water supply, irrigation system, water filtration plant.

Well

Oil drilling, oil well, salt well, water well.

- 6 Question 37c, Kind of Work (Occupation) - The entry in question 37c should describe the kind of work the person himself does, that is, his occupation. The job title is adequate only if it tells clearly and specifically what he does. For example, "janitor," "salesclerk," "TV serviceman," "auto mechanic." If his job title is not an adequate description, find out what he does and enter this information in question 37c, for example, "nails heels on shoes," "operates dough-cutting machine." When more space is needed, continue the entry in a footnote.

- a. Observe the following special cases:

Apprentice
versus
Trainee

An "apprentice" is under a contract during his training period but a "trainee" is not. Include both the occupation and the word "apprentice" or "trainee" in the description, for example, apprentice plumber, plumber trainee.

Contractor
versus
Skilled
Worker

A "contractor" is engaged principally in obtaining building or other contracts and supervising the work. A skilled worker who works with his own tools should be described as a carpenter, plasterer, plumber, electrician, etc., even though he hires others to work for him.

Housekeeper
(paid)
versus
Housemaid

A "paid housekeeper" employed in a private home for wages has the full responsibility for the management of the household. A "housemaid" (general housework), "hired girl," or "kitchen maid" does not.

Interior
Decorator
versus
Painter or
Paperhanger

An "interior decorator" designs the decoration plans for the interiors of homes, hotels, offices, etc., and supervises the placement of furniture and other decorations. A "house painter" or a "paperhanger" only does painting or hangs paper.

Machinist
versus
Mechanic
or Machine
Operator

A "machinist" is a skilled craftsman who constructs all kinds of metal parts, tools, and machines through the use of blue prints, machine and hand tools, and precision measuring instruments. A "mechanic" inspects, services, repairs, or overhauls machinery. A "machine operator" operates a factory machine (drill press operator, winder, etc.).

Secretary
versus
Official
Secretary

The title "secretary" should be used for secretarial work in an office. A secretary who is an elected or appointed officer of a business, lodge, or other organization should be reported as an "official secretary."

Names of
Departments
or Places
of Work

Occupation entries which give only the name of the department or a place of work are unsatisfactory. Examples of such unsatisfactory entries are "works in warehouse," "works in crating department," "works in cost control." The occupation entry must tell what the worker himself does, not what his department does.

37c

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

37c

Specialist

If the word "specialist" is reported as part of a job title, be sure to include a brief description of the actual duties. For example, for a "transportation specialist" the actual duties might be any one of the following: "Gives cost estimates of trips," "plans trips or tours," "conducts tours," "schedules trains," or "does economic analysis of transportation industry."

- b Examples of Adequate Entries for Question 37c - The following are some examples of inadequate and adequate entries for kind of work (occupation). Study them carefully and review them periodically to familiarize yourself with the types of entries that are proper and adequate.

Inadequate

Adequate

Adjuster

Claim adjuster, brake adjuster, machine adjuster, complaint adjuster, insurance adjuster.

Agent

Freight agent, insurance agent, sales agent, advertising agent, purchasing agent.

Caretaker or
Custodian

Servant, janitor, guard, building superintendent, gardener, groundskeeper, sexton, property clerk, locker attendant, vault attendant.

Clerk

Stock clerk, shipping clerk, sales clerk, statistical clerk, file clerk.

Custodian

See "Caretaker" above.

Doctor

Physician, dentist, veterinarian, osteopath, chiropractor.

Engineer

Civil engineer, locomotive engineer, mechanical engineer, stationary engineer, aeronautical engineer.

Entertainer

Singer, dancer, acrobat, musician.

InadequateAdequate

Factory worker

Electric motor assembler, forge heater, turret-lathe operator, weaver, loom fixer, knitter, stitcher, punch press operator, spray painter, riveter.

Farmworker

Farmer - for the owner, operator, tenant or share cropper who is self-employed. Farm manager - for the person hired to manage a farm for someone else.

Farm foreman - for the person who supervises a group of farm hands or helpers.

Farmhand or farm helper - for those who do general farmwork.

Fruit picker or cotton chopper are examples of persons who do a particular kind of farmwork.

When the place of work is a ranch, indicate specifically rancher, ranch manager, ranch foreman, and ranch hand or helper, as shown above in the case for similar types of farmworkers.

Fireman

Locomotive fireman, city fireman (city fire department), fire fighter, stationary fireman, fire boss.

Foreman

Specify the craft or activity involved, as foreman-carpenter, foreman-truck driver.

Laborer

Sweeper, charwoman, porter, janitor, stevedore, window washer, car cleaner, section hand, gardener, hand trucker.

Layout man

Patternmaker, sheet-metal worker, compositor, commercial artist, structural steel worker, boilermaker, draftsman, coppersmith.

Mechanic

Auto mechanic, dental mechanic, radio mechanic, airplane mechanic, office machine mechanic.

37c

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

37c

Inadequate

Adequate

Nun	Specify the type of work done, if possible, as housekeeper, art teacher, organist, cook, laundress, registered nurse.
Nurse	Registered nurse, nursemaid, practical nurse, nurse's aide, student, professional nurse.
Office worker	Typist, secretary, receptionist, comptometer operator, file clerk, bookkeeper, physician's attendant.
Salesman	Advertising salesman, insurance salesman, bond salesman, canvasser, driver-salesman (routeman), fruit peddler, newsboy.
Supervisor	Typing supervisor, chief bookkeeper, steward, kitchen supervisor, buyer, cutting and sewing forelady, sales instructor, route foreman.
Teacher	College teachers should be recorded by subject and title, for example, "English instructor" or "history professor." For high school and elementary school teachers, grade or level is adequate, for example, "fourth grade teacher" or "junior high school teacher."
Technician	Medical laboratory technician, dental laboratory technician, X-ray technician.
Tester	Cement tester, instrument tester, engine tester, battery tester.
Trucker	Truck driver, trucking contractor, electric trucker, hand trucker.

- 7 Question 37d, Class of Worker - For each person with entries in questions 37a-c, record the class of worker by marking one of the boxes in question 37d. The information given in answer to questions 37a-c will usually be sufficient for identifying "class of worker." If the information previously supplied is not adequate for this purpose, ask additional questions as necessary, for example, "Did he work for himself in his own business, or did he work for someone else?"
- a Private-Paid - Working for a private employer for wages, salary or commissions. This includes also, compensation by tips, piece rates, or pay in kind, if received from a nongovernmental source, regardless of whether the source is a large corporation or a single individual. Include work for wages or salary for settlement houses, churches, unions, and other nonprofit organizations, such as Red Cross and U.S. Chamber of Commerce. Also, include work for private organizations doing contract work for State or local governments.
 - b Government, Federal - Any branch of the Federal Government, including government-owned bus lines, government-owned electric power utilities, etc. Includes civilian employees of the Armed Forces and persons elected to paid federal offices.
 - c Government, Other - Any branch of the government other than the Federal Government, for example, State, city, county, etc. This includes employees of public schools, city or State owned bus lines, etc.
 - 1) Include paid elective offices, international organizations, such as the U.N., and foreign governments.
 - 2) The words, "Federal," "State," "County," "City," appear frequently in the names of private companies. Also, the names of some government agencies may appear to be private organizations. You must determine whether the employer is private or government (Federal or Other) in these cases. Also, school teachers and other professional people working for pay sometimes report themselves as self-employed. Be sure you have the correct "class-of-worker" entry for such persons. Civilian employees of the National Guard may be Federal or State employees since many of them were federalized in 1969. Ask additional questions to determine if they should be classified as "Gov. Fed." or "Gov. oth."

37d

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

37d

- d Own - Persons working for profit or fees in their OWN business, farm, shop, or office.
- 1) Include persons who have their own tools or equipment and provide services on a contract, subcontract, or job basis, such as carpenters, plumbers, taxicab operators, or truck operators.
 - 2) Exclude handymen, odd job workers, superintendents, foremen, managers, or other executives hired to manage a business or farm, salesmen working for commission, and offices or corporations.
 - 3) Ask "Is the business incorporated?" if the business is not a farm. If in reply to your question the respondent indicates the business or profession is incorporated, do not change the entry of "Own" to "Pvt. pd." Circle either "Y" or "N" according to the respondent's answer.
- e Nonpaid - Work without pay on a farm or in a business owned by a related household member. Include room and board and a cash allowance. If money which is definitely considered to be wages is received for such work, mark "Pvt. pd."
- f Never Worked - Never had a full-time civilian job lasting two consecutive weeks or longer.
- g Special Cases - If any of the following special cases are brought to your attention, employ the following rules:
- 1) Domestics, Etc. - A maid, laundress, cook, cleaning woman, gardener, or baby sitter working in another person's home is classified as "Pvt. pd."
 - 2) Farm Workers - Mark a person "Own," if he operates a farm for himself, regardless of whether he owns or rents the land.
 - a) Also, mark persons "Own," who have their own equipment and provide services to farmers, such as combine operator or a cotton-picking machine operator.
 - b) Farm managers, foremen, farmhands, etc., who work for wages or salary or at piece-rates, for example, tomato pickers, are classified as "Pvt. pd." or "Gov. oth." or "Gov. Fed." as the case may be, but not as "Own."

- 3) Partnerships - Two or more persons who operate a business in partnership should each be reported as self-employed in their own business. The word "Own" is not limited to one person.
 - 4) Clergymen - Preachers, ministers, priests, rabbis and other clergymen attached to a particular congregation or church organization are classified as "Pv't. pd."
 - a) Clergymen working in a civilian "Federal" or "Other" government position, for example, prison chaplain, are marked in the "Gov. Fed." or "Gov. oth." box in question 44d.
 - b) Clergymen not attached to any particular church organization and who conduct religious services on a fee basis are regarded as self-employed and in their "Own" business.
 - 5) Nuns receive "pay-in-kind" and are classified as "Pv't. pd."
 - 6) Public Utility Employees - Public utilities are subject to governmental regulation. Transportation, communication, electric light and power, gas, water, garbage collection and sewage disposal facilities are owned by either government or private organizations. Be sure to distinguish between government operated and private organizations in recording class of worker for public utility employees.
- 8) Check for Inconsistencies - Always be sure the entries for questions 37a-d are consistent. For example, a person whose employer and industry in 37a and 37b is "Government, Federal" should not be checked "Pv't. pd." in 37d. A person whose industry in 37b is "retail jewelry store" should not have an occupation of "barber" in 37c, etc. All entries for questions 37a-d apply to the same job, business or profession.

38

Question 38, Family Income

38

Please look at this card -- (Show Card I)	
38. Which of these income groups represents your total combined family income for the past 12 months -- that is yours, your --'s etc.? Include income from all sources such as wages, salaries, social security or retirement benefits, help from relatives, rent from property, and so forth.	38. Group 00 <input type="checkbox"/> A 03 <input type="checkbox"/> D :: <input type="checkbox"/> H 01 <input type="checkbox"/> B 04 <input type="checkbox"/> E :: <input type="checkbox"/> I 02 <input type="checkbox"/> C 05 <input type="checkbox"/> F :: <input type="checkbox"/> J 06 <input type="checkbox"/> G 06 <input type="checkbox"/> G :: <input type="checkbox"/> K

- 1 Ask question 38 once for a family to obtain the total combined income for all related household members during the past 12 months. Each unrelated household member or group should be asked question 38 individually at the time he is interviewed. If the respondent does not or will not answer the question for some reason, enter the reason in a footnote.
 - a Read the introductory phrase, "Please look at this card," show Card I to the respondent, and then ask question 38.
 - b Read the income question just as it appears on the questionnaire. After you ask the income question, give the respondent enough time to prepare his estimate and mark the appropriate box. Where necessary, help the respondent obtain the total by summing the income of several family members or the income for several sources.
- 2 Income of All Related Members - We want the money income of the household head plus that of all his relatives who are currently household members. Also, include the income of a member of the Armed Forces who is living at home with his family even though we do not record health information about him. If he is not living at home, include allotments and other money received by the family from him. If the head of the household is living alone or with no other relatives, include his income only.
- 3 Income of Unrelated Persons - On the questionnaire prepared for each roomer, servant or other person not related to the household head, mark the box for his or her individual income. If two or more such persons are related to each other, for example, roomer and his wife, mark the box for their combined incomes.

4 Include as Income - Wages and salaries, net income from business or farm, pensions, dividends, interest, rent, welfare, alimony, and other money income.

a Do Not Count as Income:

- 1) Income in kind, such as room and board, free meals in restaurants, value of crops produced by a farmer but consumed by his family, etc.
- 2) Insurance payments or lump sum inheritances.
- 3) Occasional gifts of money from persons not living in the household or any exchange of money between relatives living in the same household.
- 4) Money received from selling one's own house, car, or other personal property.
- 5) Withdrawals of savings from banks.
- 6) Tax refunds.

5 Where "Zero" Income Reported - When no one in the family had income or when a "loss" or "broke even" was reported as the total income for the family, mark the Group "A" box. Before accepting an answer of "No income," be sure the respondent understands all of the things we count as income.

6 Get Best Estimate - In difficult cases, you may have to help the respondent. Find out who worked during the past 12 months, how much they made a week, etc.; find out who operated a business or farm; or who received any pension, dividends, etc.

7 Reasons for Obtaining Income - Income is important in statistics for separating families into groups that live differently. The way these different income groups live often affects their health. For example, income indicates:

- a Differences in ability to obtain adequate health care.
- b Differences in ability to afford food for adequate diets to prevent diseases, such as malnutrition in children.

Questions 39 and 40, Person Income

<p>39a. Which (other) family members received some income during the past 12 months? Mark "Income" box in person's column.</p>	<p>39a. <input type="checkbox"/> Income</p>
<p>b. Did any other family members receive any income during the past 12 months? Y (Reask 39a and b) N</p>	
<p>If only one person with "Income" box marked, go to Q. 41. If 2 or more persons with "Income" box marked, ask Q. 40 for each:</p>	<p>Group 03 <input type="checkbox"/> D 07 <input type="checkbox"/> H 00 <input type="checkbox"/> A 04 <input type="checkbox"/> E 08 <input type="checkbox"/> I 01 <input type="checkbox"/> B 05 <input type="checkbox"/> F 09 <input type="checkbox"/> J 02 <input type="checkbox"/> C 06 <input type="checkbox"/> G 10 <input type="checkbox"/> K</p>
<p>40. Which of these income groups represents --'s income for the past 12 months?</p>	<p>40.</p>

- 1 Ask questions 39a-b if there are two or more family members to obtain the persons within the family who received any income at all during the past 12 months.
 - a Ask question 39a and mark the "Income" box in each person's column reported as receiving income during the past 12 months. Then ask question 39b to determine if any other family members received some income during the past 12 months. If the answer is "Yes," reask 39a using the parenthetical "other" and mark the "Income" box in that person's column. Continue to reask 39a and b until a final "No" is received to 39b, then go to question 40.
 - b If only one person receives income or if it is a one-person household, mark the "Income" box in that person's column and go to question 41.
- 2 If there are two or more persons for whom you have marked the "Income" box in question 39, ask question 40 for each.

This question obtains the income group which corresponds to the income received by each person during the past 12 months.

Do not probe to correct any inconsistencies between the responses given to question 40 and the family income reported in question 38.

41 — 42

Question 41, Question 42
Marital Status, Times Married

41 — 42

If 17 years old or over, ask:		0 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 17
41. Is -- now married, widowed, divorced, separated, or never married? -- Mark one box for each person.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Married - spouse present	41. _____
	2 <input type="checkbox"/> Married - spouse absent	
	3 <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed	
	4 <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced	
	5 <input type="checkbox"/> Separated	
	6 <input type="checkbox"/> Never married	
42. How many times has -- been married?	42. _____	Times

- 1 Ask question 41 on marital status only for persons 17 years old and over. If the person is under 17 years of age, mark "Under 17," without asking the question even though you may have learned that the person is married, widowed, divorced, or separated.
- 2 For persons 17 and over, if it is obvious from the relationship entries that two of the household members are husband and wife, mark one of the "Married" boxes without asking the question.
 - a Mark "Married-spouse present" for each married household member whose spouse is also listed on the questionnaire. This includes Armed Forces members living at home as well as those whose spouses are temporarily absent.
 - b Mark "Married-spouse absent" for a married person who is not legally separated, and whose husband or wife is not a member of the same household. This includes Armed Forces members who are not living at home.
- 3 Annulled Marriages - Consider persons whose only marriage has been annulled as "Never married."
- 4 Separated Persons - Accept a respondent's statement that a person is separated. If, however, the respondent raises a question as to the meaning of "separated," explain that the term refers only to married persons who have a legal separation or who have parted because they do not get along with each other.
 - a Persons who are separated from their spouse because of the circumstances of their employment, service in the Armed Forces or similar reasons (other than marital discord) should be classified as married-spouse absent, not separated.
- 5 Common-Law Marriages - Consider persons with common-law marriages as married.
- 6 Ask question 42 for each person not marked "Under 17" or "Never married" in question 41 and enter the number of times on the line provided.



CHAPTER 12. TABLE X AND ITEM E



Table X

TABLE X - LIVING QUARTERS DETERMINATIONS AT LISTED ADDRESS			
Line No.	LOCATION OF UNIT	• If listed, enter sheet and line number, STOP Table X, and continue interview for original sample unit. • If unlisted, go to 4.	• If outside AREA SEGMENT boundary; mark box below, STOP Table X, and go to Household Page, Item 9, or Probe page, question 1 (as applicable).
	Where are these quarters located? Enter exact description or location, e.g., basement, 2nd floor, rear.		
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
1		S ___ L ___	<input type="checkbox"/> Outside segment boundary
2		S ___ L ___	<input type="checkbox"/> Outside segment boundary
3		S ___ L ___	<input type="checkbox"/> Outside segment boundary

Are these (specify location) quarters for more than one group of people? If "Yes," fill one line for each group.	USE OR CHARACTERISTICS				CLASSIFICATION		
	OCCUPIED		ALL QUARTERS		N - Not a separate unit - Add occupants to this questionnaire. (Complete a separate questionnaire for each unrelated person or family group.) HU } Separate unit - OT } interview on a separate questionnaire.		
	Do the occupants of these (specify location) quarters live and eat with any other group of people?		Do these quarters in (specify location) have:				
(5)	(6)	Direct access from the outside or through a common hall?	Complete kitchen facilities for this unit only?	(7)	(8)	(9)	
Yes No	Yes - Go to 9 and circle N No	Yes No	Yes No	N HU OT			
Yes No	Yes - Go to 9 and circle N No	Yes No	Yes No	N HU OT			
Yes No	Yes - Go to 9 and circle N No	Yes No	Yes No	N HU OT			

1 Table X is designed to record the existence of additional living quarters at the sample address and to help determine whether the living quarters are a part of the unit being interviewed or constitute an extra unit, to be interviewed on a separate questionnaire.

2 See Part C, Topic (54) for instructions for filling Table X.

3 Be sure to continue the interview for the original sample unit after filling Table X.

E

Item E

E

E	If this questionnaire is for an extra unit, enter Control Number of original sample unit _____	If in AREA SEGMENT, also enter for FIRST unit listed on property _____	LISTING SHEET	
			Sheet number	Line number

1 Complete item E (above Table X) on each questionnaire prepared for an extra unit.

- a Item E requires the control number of the original sample unit; and if the extra unit is in an area segment, the Area Segment Listing Sheet and line number of the first unit listed on the same property as the original sample unit.

CHAPTER 13. PROCEDURES FOR EXTRA UNITS AND MERGED UNITS

A Extra Units

- 1 An extra unit is an unlisted unit, found at the sample address at time of interview. For a more complete discussion of extra units, refer to Part C, Topic (18).
- 2 Prepare an HIS-1 for each extra unit, whether occupied or vacant.
 - a Transcribe to this questionnaire, heading items 2, 3, and 4 from the questionnaire for the original unit.
 - b Transcribe PSU and segment number to item 5 but leave the space for serial number blank.
 - c Item 7, Year built - Mark the Ask or Do NOT Ask box the same as for the original unit.
 - d Item 10, Land use - Mark the URBAN/RURAL boxes the same as for the original sample unit.
 - e Fill item E on the back of the questionnaire for the extra unit.
 - f If the extra unit is occupied, complete the questionnaire in the usual fashion. If the extra unit is vacant, fill the questionnaire as you would for any vacant unit.

See page EI-11 for items which must be filled prior to transmittal.

- 3 Prepare an INTER-COMM; fill the heading items and explain how the extra unit was discovered. Attach the INTER-COMM to the questionnaire for the extra unit.

B Merged Units

- 1 A merger is a unit which is formed by the combination of two or more units. The resulting unit may or may not be in the current sample.
 - a To determine if the merged unit should be interviewed, see Part C, Topic (33) of the manual.
 - b For merged units discovered at time of updating see Part C, Topic (33).

2 Questionnaires

- a First Unit Involved in Merger—A Current Sample Unit - If the first of the listed units which are involved in the merger is a unit for which you have a questionnaire, interview the merged unit on that questionnaire. If the merger involves any other units for which you have questionnaires, return those questionnaires as Type C—merged.

- b First Unit Involved in Merger—Not a Current Sample Unit - If the first of the listed units involved in the merger is not a current sample unit but the merger involves one or more other units for which you do have questionnaires, return all the questionnaires as Type C—merged.
- c On the Questionnaire Used for the Merger - Enter in item 6a the complete description or address of the units now merged. In the footnotes section, enter the date the merger was discovered.
- 3 In addition to the entries required on the questionnaires for merged units, certain notations must be made on the listing sheet. For these instructions, refer to Part C, Topic (33).
- 4 Prepare an INTER-COMM; fill the heading items and specify sheet and line numbers of the merged units. Attach the INTER-COMM to the questionnaires for the merged units.

CHAPTER 14. NONINTERVIEW HOUSEHOLDS

A General

A noninterview household is one for which information is not obtained because:

The unit is occupied but an interview was not possible.

or

The unit is occupied by persons not eligible for interview.

or

The unit is not occupied.

- 1 Noninterviews are classified into three groups—Types A, B, and C. The Type A group consists of households occupied by persons eligible for interview and for whom questionnaires would be filled if an interview had been obtained. Sample units which are not interviewed for other reasons are Type B and C noninterviews. They are covered in Part C of this manual.
- 2 Every Type A noninterview means we are losing valuable information and our sample returns may not be representative of the population. These noninterviews may arise under the following circumstances:
 - a No one is found at home in spite of repeated visits.
 - b The entire family is temporarily away during all of the interview period.
 - c The respondent refuses to give information.
 - d The unit, although occupied, cannot be reached because of impassable roads.
 - e An interview cannot be made because of serious illness or death in the family.
 - f You are unable to locate a sample unit.

Under some circumstances, Type A noninterviews are unavoidable. However, if you establish good relations with your respondents and make your visits when people are likely to be home, many noninterviews can be avoided.

B Questionnaires for Noninterviews

Return a questionnaire for each noninterview sample unit. Mark the noninterview reason in item 18 and fill other items as indicated below.

- 1 If a sample unit is Type A or B noninterview, fill items 7, 8, 9a-c if applicable, 12a-c as applicable, 17, and 19.
- 2 If a sample unit is Type C noninterview, fill item 9c, if applicable, and items 17 and 19. Leave all other items blank.

C How to Report Type A Noninterviews

Mark one of the four boxes in HIS-1 item 18 ("Refusal," "No one at home," "Temporarily absent," or "Other" as defined below) for units occupied by persons eligible for interview which were not interviewed.

- 1 Refusal - Occasionally, a household may refuse to give any information. For example, the manager of a hotel or other type of special place may refuse to allow you to interview persons in the special place. In a footnote, explain the pertinent details regarding the respondent's reason for refusing to grant the interview. Return the HIS-1 as a Type A noninterview with "Refusal" marked.

Explain the circumstances on an Inter-Comm for any refusal household, attach it to the HIS-1 involved and mail it to the DCC with your other completed work. Your office will send a letter to the respondent (carbon copy to you) requesting the household's cooperation and stating that you will call on them again. If your supervisor will be in the area on other business, he may also visit the refusal household to try to obtain their cooperation.

- 2 No One at Home - If no one is at home at your first call, proceed as follows:

Fill a Request for Appointment (Form 11-38 or 11-38a) indicating when you plan to call back. Enter your name and telephone number in the space provided.

Also enter in a footnote on the Household page the date and time you said you would call back.

In situations in which the use of appointment forms is impractical, call back in an effort to contact the household. Try to find out from neighbors, janitors, or other knowledgeable persons when the occupants will be home.

If you have made a number of callbacks at various times of the day and still have been unable to contact the respondent, return the HIS-1 as noninterview, marking the "No one at home" box in item 18. Do not confuse this reason with the noninterview reason "Temporarily absent."

- 3 Temporarily Absent - When no one is home at the first visit, find out from neighbors, janitors, etc., whether the occupants are temporarily absent. Report a household as "Temporarily absent" if all of the following conditions are met:

All the occupants are away temporarily on a vacation, business trip, caring for sick relatives, or some other reason, and will not return before your close-out date for that week.

and

The personal effects of the occupants, such as furniture are there. Even if the furniture is there, be sure it is the occupant's furniture because it could be a furnished unit for rent.

and

The unit is not for rent or for sale during the period of absence.

EXCEPTION: The unit is for rent or sale; however, it is not available until a specified time when the present occupants will leave the unit. For example, the present occupants are trying to sell their house with an agreement that they would not have to move until two weeks after the selling date. When you arrive to interview the unit, you discover that it has not been sold and that the occupants are away for the interview period. Mark "Temporarily absent" as the noninterview reason.

and

The unit is not a summer cottage or other seasonal type unit.

If the occupants will return on a certain date, record this date in the notes space of the Household page and the source of the information (such as a neighbor). If the date of their expected return is before the end of the interview period, make a return visit, if feasible.

If the occupants are definitely not expected to return before the end of the interview period, return the HIS-1 as noninterview, marking "Temporarily absent" in item 18. In a footnote, enter where they are (address and telephone number, if possible) and expected date of return.

- 4 Other - Mark occupied units which are noninterview for reasons other than "Refusal," "No one at home," or "Temporarily absent," as "Other" in HIS-1, item 18, with the specific reason entered in the space provided.

Among others, these reasons could include the following:

"No eligible respondent"

"Death in family"

"Household quarantined"

"Roads impassable" - During the winter months or in case of floods or similar disaster, there may be households which cannot be reached because of impassable roads. In such cases, ascertain whether or not it is occupied from neighbors, local grocery stores, gasoline service stations, Post Office or rural mail carrier, the county recorder of deeds, the U.S. Forest Service (Department of Agriculture) or other local officials.

If you determine the unit is occupied, mark "Other" in item 18 and describe the circumstances in the space provided.

If you determine the unit is vacant, determine which box to mark in item 18, Type B, using the criteria given in Part C, Topic (35).

D Type B and C Noninterviews

Mark the category that indicates why a sample unit is a Type B or C noninterview. An explanation of Type B and C noninterview reasons is given in Part C, Topic (35). The Other—Specify categories should be used to describe any Type B or Type C noninterview for which a reason has not been provided. An INTER-COMM must accompany all Type C noninterviews.

CHAPTER 15. CONDITION SUPPLEMENTS

A General

Both the Medically Attended Condition Supplement (Form HIS-1A) and the Nonmedically Attended Condition Supplement (Form HIS-1B) are to be completed according to the following rules:

- 1 Any person requiring either of these Condition Supplements must respond for himself if he is 19 years of age or older. A proxy respondent is acceptable for either of these supplements only for persons who are under 19 years of age, persons away from home during the interview period, and for persons who are mentally or physically incompetent.
- 2 During the initial interview, all required Condition Supplements for which an eligible respondent is available should be filled. This includes supplements for sample persons and nonsample persons.
- 3 If the person requiring either of these Condition Supplements is an adult sample person and he is not at home or is otherwise unavailable during the initial interview, a return visit must be made to interview that sample person.
- 4 If the person requiring either of these Condition Supplements is an adult nonsample person and he is not at home or is otherwise unavailable during the initial interview, a telephone call should be made to interview that nonsample person. A direct personal interview follow-back can be used in place of a telephone call to obtain the information for the Condition Supplements for nonsample persons only under the following conditions:
 - a The household has no telephone or refused to provide a telephone number
or
 - b The nonsample person requiring the Condition Supplement is at home during the time that a return visit is made to interview a sample person who was unavailable during the initial interview.
- 5 It may occur that, on a return visit to interview a sample person, the sample person is not at home or is otherwise unavailable for interview, and yet a nonsample person who requires a Condition Supplement is there. In a case like this, complete the Condition Supplement for the nonsample person and reschedule the appointment for the sample person.

B Form HIS-1A - Medically Attended Condition Supplement

Complete a separate HIS-1A according to the entries in item A4 of the Condition page for each condition which started during the past two weeks for which a doctor was seen or talked to.

C Form HIS-1B - Nonmedically Attended Condition Supplement

Complete a separate HIS-1B according to the entries in item A4 of the Condition page for each condition which started during the past two weeks for which no doctor was seen or talked to but which caused one or more cut-down days.

D Items a-k

These items are the same on both Condition Supplements.

(a) - (h)

Identification Items, Items a-h

(a) - (h)

a. PSU	b. Segment number	c. Serial number	d. Sample	e. Person number	f. Sample person
				1 Y	2 N
g. Name of condition			h. Name of person		

- 1 Transcribe the identification items from the questionnaire to the appropriate form, including the person number, name of condition, and name of person. In item f, circle "Y" if the supplement is for a sample person; circle "N" if the supplement is for a nonsample person.

Eligible Respondent Available, Item i

(i)

(i)

i. Determine if eligible respondent is available:

Eligible respondent available

Telephone call or return visit required (A5, Condition page)

- 1 If an eligible respondent is available during the initial interview, mark the "Eligible respondent available" box, and proceed with question 1. If an eligible respondent is not at home or is otherwise not available for interview at this time, mark the "Telephone call or return visit required" box, and continue with item A5 on this Condition page.

Int.

Introduction

Int.



INTRODUCTION:

In an interview at your household today (earlier this week) it was reported that you recently had The following questions refer to that condition.

Respondent denies having condition (RA)

- 1 Read the above introduction if either supplement is completed during a callback, whether by telephone or by a return visit. Use the phrase "earlier this week" if the callback is not made on the day of the initial interview. This introduction is the same on both supplements.
- 2 If the respondent denies having the condition, mark this box and go to item RA on the Medically Attended Condition Supplement or item RB on the Nonmedically Attended Condition Supplement.

E Questions 1 and 2

These questions appear on both Condition Supplements

①

Question 1, Date First Noticed

①

1. Please look at the calendar (HAND CALENDAR) and tell me on what date you first noticed (had) the	_____	_____
	Month	Day

- 1 Ask this question using the two-week calendar and insert the name of the condition for the dots. If the supplement is completed by telephone, refer the respondent to the calendar on the back of the "Thank You" letter or ask him to get a calendar. Use the parenthetical "had" instead of "first noticed" if an accident or injury was involved. For example, "on what date you had the sprained back." Enter the month and date the condition was first noticed in the answer space. Verify the date if it was given in answer to question 9 of the Condition page. If in recording the date you learn that it was first noticed outside the two-week reference period, enter the date in question 1 as reported by the respondent and continue with the remaining questions.

②

Question 2, How Serious

②

2. At that time when you first noticed (had) the . . . , how serious did you think it was - very serious, somewhat serious, or not serious at all?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Very serious 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Somewhat serious 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Not serious at all
--	---

- 1 Question 2 determines the person's opinion of the seriousness of the condition when it was first noticed. This could be different from his opinion after talking to a doctor.

F Questions 3-28, Medically Attended Condition Supplement

3

Question 3, How Long Before Talking to Doctor, Why Waited

3

<p>3a. After you first noticed (had) the condition on _____ (date) _____, about how long was it before you visited or talked to a doctor about it?</p>	<p>000 <input type="checkbox"/> Discovered by doctor (5) 100 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 4 hours (4)</p> <p>2 _____ Hours 3 _____ Days 4 _____ Weeks</p>
<p>b. We are interested in the various reasons why people wait before going to a doctor. Please tell me whether any of the following statements were reasons why you waited _____ (time) _____ to see or talk to a doctor about this condition -</p> <p>PROBE IF RESPONSE IS INAPPROPRIATE:</p> <p>PROBE IF RESPONSE IS INAPPROPRIATE:</p>	<p>A. Did you wait because you couldn't get an appointment or the doctor was not available? 1 Y 2 N</p> <p>B. Because you didn't have the money? 1 Y 2 N</p> <p>C. Because you didn't have a way to get to the doctor? 1 Y 2 N</p> <p>D. Did you wait because you felt _____ the doctor couldn't do anything for the condition? 1 Y 2 N</p> <p>E. Because you felt you could treat the condition yourself? 1 Y 2 N</p> <p>F. Because you didn't want to bother the doctor? 1 Y 2 N</p> <p>G. Did you wait because you didn't think it was serious enough? 1 Y 2 N</p> <p>H. Because you feel uncomfortable with doctors or have a fear of doctors? 1 Y 2 N</p> <p>I. Did you wait for any other reason? 1 Y 2 N(K)</p> <p>J. What was the reason? (1) _____ (Reask I) (2) _____ (Reask I)</p> <p>If all "N's" in A-I, ask; otherwise, go to Q. 3c:</p> <p>K. Why did you wait _____ (time) _____ to see or talk to a doctor about this . . . ? Any other reasons? (1) _____ (2) _____</p>
<p>If two or more reasons given in statements A-K, ask; otherwise mark box:</p> <p>c. Which of these reasons would you say was the MAIN reason for waiting to see a doctor for this condition? Circle the appropriate statement letter in the space to the right.</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Only 1 reason</p> <p>01 A 04 D 07 G 10 J(2) 13 K(1) 16 K(4) 02 B 05 E 08 H 11 J(3) 14 K(2) 03 C 06 F 09 J(1) 12 J(4) 15 K(3)</p>

F1

How Long Before Talking to Doctor, Why Waited (Continued)

- 1 Question 3a determines the interval between the time the condition was first noticed and when the doctor was seen or talked to about it. When asking this question, insert the date entered in question 1 and record the number of hours, days, or weeks.

If the respondent is uncertain as to what is meant by this question or replies "Immediately" or "Right away," ask "Was it a matter of hours, days, or weeks?" If "just a matter of hours" is the response, ask "How many hours was it?"

- 2 Ask 3b if the answer to 3a is four hours or over to determine why the person waited to see the doctor.

Then proceed by asking questions A through I and circle "Y" or "N," as appropriate. Record the response to J verbatim if a "Yes" response is received to I.

If all "N's" are reported in answer to A-I, ask question K. If the response to J or K is something like "The pain went away" or "My sinus cleared up," the question has not been answered. What is wanted is why the person waited until the pain went away, or until his sinus cleared up. When such inadequate answers are given, probe until an appropriate response is received.

- 3 Question 3c determines which reason is the main reason a person waited to see the doctor when two or more reasons are given in A-K.
 - a If only one reason has been reported in A-K, mark the "Only 1 reason" box.
 - b After asking question 3c, circle the letter that corresponds to the source of the main reason for waiting as reported by the respondent. If he is unable to determine the main reason from several, circle as many as are mentioned in answer to 3c.

4

Question 4, Received Advice

4

4a. Before you talked to a doctor about this condition, did you ask anyone for advice about it, such as a nurse, druggist, relative, friend or someone else?	1 Y .		2 N(5) -					
b. Who was this?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Nurse		2 <input type="checkbox"/> Druggist		3 <input type="checkbox"/> Relative (Household member)		4 <input type="checkbox"/> Relative (Non-household member)	
c. Did you ask anyone else for advice? Y (Reask 4b and c) N					5 <input type="checkbox"/> Friend		<input type="checkbox"/> Other -- Specify _____	
d. Did -- advise you to see a doctor?	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N
e. Did -- advise you to take some medicine?	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N
f. Did -- advise you on some other type of treatment?	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N	1 Y	2 N
g. Did -- give you any other advice?	Y	o N (Next col.)	Y	o N (Next col.)	Y	o N (Next col.)	Y	o N(5)
h. What advice did -- give you?	_____		_____		_____		_____	
	(Reask g)		(Reask g)		(Reask g)		(Reask g)	

- 1 Ask question 4a to determine if the person sought advice from someone else before talking to the doctor and if so, who the person was and what advice was given.
- 2 Ask 4b if "Yes" is given in response to 4a, mark the appropriate box for each person mentioned and ask 4c. Continue to reask b and c until a final "No" is received to c. If it is learned that the relative or friend is also a nurse or druggist, mark the "Nurse" or "Druggist" box instead of relative or friend.
- 3 Then ask 4d-g for each person marked in 4b and circle "Y" or "N" as appropriate. Ask 4d-g for the first person reported in 4b. If "N" is received in answer to g, go to the next column and ask 4d-g for the next person until all columns are completed.

NOTE: If two boxes are marked in the third column, you should refer to both persons when asking questions 4d-g; for example, "Did your relative or friend advise you to see a doctor?" If both "Yes" and "No" answers are received, circle "Y."

- 4 Ask h if "Y" is circled in g and enter the respondent's answer verbatim. Continue to reask g until a final "No" is received for this person, then go to the next column.

FL

5

5

Question 5, First Visited Doctor

5. Please look at the calendar. (HAND CALENDAR) On what date did you first visit or talk to a doctor about this condition?	_____	_____
	Month	Date

- 1 Ask question 5, again referring the respondent to the calendar card and enter the date the doctor was first visited or talked to. Complete the remainder of the supplement even though the visit took place outside the two-week reference period.

6

Question 6, Where Saw Doctor

6

6. On (date) where did you first see or talk to the doctor - at a clinic, hospital, doctor's office, or some other place? If hospital: Was it a hospital outpatient clinic or the emergency room? If clinic: Was it a hospital outpatient clinic, a company clinic, or some other kind of clinic?	0 <input type="checkbox"/> While inpatient in hospital (RA) 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Doctor's office (group practice or doctor's clinic) (7) 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Telephone (20) 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Hospital outpatient clinic (10) 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Home (7) 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Hospital emergency room (10) 6 <input type="checkbox"/> Company or industry clinic (10) 7 <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify 7
	(10)

- 1 Ask question 6, inserting the date of the visit from question 5. If the response to this question is "Hospital" or "Clinic," ask the appropriate probe question to determine if this was the outpatient clinic, emergency room, company clinic, etc. If you learn the doctor was first seen while the person was an inpatient in the hospital, mark that box and go to item RA on page 6. Do not ask any more questions on this supplement. If any other box is marked, follow the appropriate skip instruction.

7

Question 7, Visited Doctor Before

7

7. Had you ever gone to this doctor before this visit?	1 Y 2 N
--	------------------------------

1 Ask question 7 if "Doctor's office" or "Home" is marked in question 6 and circle the appropriate answer.

8

Question 8, How Choose Doctor

8

8. How did you choose this doctor - through another doctor, a relative or friend, a medical bureau, from a telephone directory, or in some other way?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Another doctor 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Relative/friend 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Medical bureau 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Telephone directory <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify <u>7</u>
---	---

1 This question determines the manner in which the respondent selected this doctor. If questions arise, the information wanted is how the doctor was initially chosen, so if the response is "I've been going to him for years" say something like "How did you choose him in the first place?"

9

Question 9, Usual Doctor

9

9a. Is this doctor you visited on <u>10/26/52</u> the doctor you would usually go to for this type of condition?	1 Y (13) 2 N
b. Why didn't you use the doctor or place that you would usually go to for this type of condition?	<hr/> <hr/> <div style="text-align: right;">(13)</div>

1 Insert the date entered in question 5 and circle the appropriate answer. Ask 9b if "N" in 9a and enter the respondent's answer verbatim.

F1

10

10

Question 10, Visited Place Before

10. Had you ever gone to this place before this visit?	1 Y	2 N
--	-----	-----

1 Ask question 10 and circle the appropriate answer if "Hospital outpatient clinic," "Hospital emergency room," "Company or industry clinic," or "Other" is marked in question 6.

11

Question 11, How Choose Place

11

11. How did you choose this place - through another doctor, a relative or friend, a medical bureau, from a telephone directory, or in some other way?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Another doctor 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Relative/friend 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Medical bureau 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Telephone directory 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify <u>7</u>
---	---

1 This question determines the manner in which the respondent selected this place. If questions arise, the information wanted is how the place was initially chosen, so if the response is "I've been going to this place for years," say something like "How did you first choose this place?"

12

Question 12, Usual Place

12

12a. Is this place you visited on <u>(date)</u> the place you would usually go to for this type of condition?	o Y(13) N
b. Why didn't you use the doctor or place that you would usually go to for this type of condition?	<hr/> <hr/>

1 Insert the date entered in question 5 and circle the appropriate answer. Ask 12b if "N" in 12a and enter the respondent's answer verbatim.

13

Question 13, Made Appointment

13

If "Home" in Q.6, go to Q. 16.	
13a. Did you make an appointment for this visit?	1 Y 2 N(14)
b. Did you have any problem making this appointment?	Y o N(14)
c. What were the problems?	<hr/> <hr/>

1 If "Home" is marked in question 6, skip questions 13-15 and go to question 16. If "Yes" to 13b, ask 13c and enter the response verbatim.

F1

14

14

Question 14, Difficult to Get to Doctor

14a. When you visited the doctor on (Gate), how difficult was it for you to get there - was it very difficult, somewhat difficult, or not at all difficult?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Very difficult 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Somewhat difficult 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Not at all difficult (c)
b. Why was it difficult?	_____ _____
c. About how long did it take you to get there?	1 _____ Minutes 2 _____ Hours

- 1 This question determines how difficult it was to get to the doctor. Insert the date entered in question 5. Ask 14b if "Very difficult" or "Somewhat difficult" is marked in 14a. Enter verbatim the answer(s) given by the respondent on the lines provided. In 14c, enter hours and minutes if both are reported.

15

Question 15, Waiting Time

15

15a. After getting there, did you feel that the time you had to wait to see this doctor was much too long, somewhat too long, or not too long?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Much too long 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Somewhat too long 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Not too long
b. About how long did you have to wait after getting there?	1 _____ Minutes 2 _____ Hours

- 1 Question 15a obtains the respondent's opinion of the length of waiting time involved before the doctor was seen.
- 2 Mark the applicable answer box and go next to question 15b to obtain the amount of waiting time involved before the doctor was seen. Enter on the lines provided both the hours and minutes, if any, which are reported.

16

16

Question 16, Spend Enough Time

<p>16. During this visit on <u> (date) </u>, did the doctor spend enough time with you or not enough time?</p>	<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> Spent enough time</p> <p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> Did not spend enough time</p>
--	---

1 This question determines whether the respondent feels the doctor spent enough time with him or not enough time with him.

Mark the appropriate box and go next to question 17.

17

17

Question 17, Advise to Come Back

<p>17a. During this visit did the doctor advise you to come back and see him for the . . . ?</p>	<p>1 Y 2 N (18)</p>
<p>b. Did or will you go back to see him for this condition?</p>	<p>1 Y (18) 2 N 3 DK</p>
<p>c. Why not?</p>	<p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>

1 Ask 17a and circle the appropriate answer.

2 If "No" or "DK" to 17b, ask 17c and enter the reason the respondent will not go back to see the doctor.

F1

18

18

Question 18, Prescribed Medicine

18a. During this visit on <u>(date)</u> , did the doctor prescribe or advise you to get any medicine for this . . . ?	1 Y	2 N(19)
b. Did you get this medicine?	0 Y(19)	N
c. Why not?	<hr/> <hr/>	

1 This question determines whether the doctor prescribed or advised any medicine for this person.

If a response of "Yes" is received to question 18a, circle "Y" and go to question 18b; otherwise, circle "N" and go to question 19. If "No" to 18b, enter in 18c the reason the respondent did not get the medicine which was prescribed or advised for him.

19

Question 19, Referred to Another Doctor

19

19a. During this visit did the doctor refer you to another doctor?	1 Y	2 N(28)
b. Did or will you see this other doctor?	1 Y(28)	2 N 9 DK
c. Why not?	<hr/> <hr/>	

(28)

1 If the answer to 19a is "Yes," ask 19b to determine if the person did or will see this other doctor. If "No" or "DK" to 19b, ask 19c and enter the reason he did or will not.

20

Question 20, Doctor or Place Visited Before

20

20. Had you ever gone to this doctor or place before this call?	1 Y 2 N
---	--

1 Ask question 20 and circle the appropriate answer if the response to question 6 is "Telephone."

21

Question 21, Choose Doctor or Place

21

21. How did you choose this doctor or place - through another doctor, a relative or friend, a medical bureau, from a telephone directory, or in some other way?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Another doctor 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Relative/friend 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Medical bureau 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Telephone directory <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify <u> 7 </u>
---	---

1 This question determines the manner in which the respondent selected this doctor or place. If questions arise, the information wanted is how the doctor or place was initially chosen, so if the response is "I've been going to him for years," say something like "How did you first choose this doctor or place?"

22

Question 22, Usual Doctor or Place

22

22a. Is this doctor or place you called on <u> </u> (date) the doctor or place you would usually go to for this type of condition?	0 Y(23) N
b. Why didn't you use the doctor or place that you would usually go to for this type of condition?	_____ _____

1 Insert the date entered in question 5 when asking this question. Enter in 22b the respondent's answer verbatim.

F1

23

23

Question 23, Difficult to Reach by Telephone

23a. How difficult was it for you to reach the doctor by telephone on <u>(date)</u> - was it very difficult, somewhat difficult, or not at all difficult?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Very difficult 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Somewhat difficult 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Not at all difficult (24)
b. Why was it difficult?	<hr/> <hr/>

- 1 Mark the appropriate box according to the respondent's answer. Ask 23b if "Very difficult" or "Somewhat difficult" was given in answer to 23a and enter the response verbatim.

24

Question 24, Spend Enough Time

24

24. During this call on <u>(date)</u> , did the doctor spend enough time with you or not enough time?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Spent enough time 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Did not spend enough time
---	--

- 1 This question determines whether the respondent feels the doctor spent enough time with him or not enough time with him.

Mark the appropriate box and go next to question 25.

25

Question 25, Advise to Come In

25

25a. During this call did the doctor advise you to come in and see him for the . . . ?	1 Y	2 N(26)
b. Did or will you go in to see him for this condition?	1 Y(26)	2 N 9 DK
c. Why not?	<hr/> <hr/>	

- 1 Ask question 25a and circle the appropriate answer. If "No" or "DK" to 25b, ask 25c and enter verbatim the reason the respondent did or will not go to see the doctor.

26

Question 26, Prescribed Medicine

26

26a. During this call on (date) , did the doctor prescribe or advise you to get any medicine for this . . . ?	1 Y	2 N(27)
b. Did you get this medicine?	0 Y(27)	N
c. Why not?	<hr/> <hr/>	

- 1 This question determines whether the doctor prescribed or advised medicine for this person.

If a response of "Yes" is received to question 26a, circle "Y" and go to 26b; otherwise, circle "N" and go to question 27. If "No" to 26b, enter in 26c the reason the respondent did not get the medicine which was prescribed or advised for him.

F1

27

27

Question 27, Refer to Another Doctor

27a. During this call, did this doctor refer you to another doctor?	1 Y 2 N(28)
b. Did or will you see this other doctor?	1 Y(28) 2 N 3 DK
c. Why not?	<hr/> <hr/>

- 1 If the answer to 27a is "Yes," ask 27b to determine if the person did or will see this other doctor. If "No" or "DK" to 27b, ask 27c and enter verbatim the reason he did or will not.

Question 28, Satisfied with Treatment

<p>28a. In your opinion, were you satisfied or dissatisfied with the treatment or care you received from this doctor on <u>(date)</u> ?</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Satisfied (b) <input type="checkbox"/> Dissatisfied (c)</p>
<p>b. Would you say that you were very satisfied or just somewhat satisfied?</p>	<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> Very satisfied (29) 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Somewhat satisfied (d)</p>
<p>c. Would you say that you were very dissatisfied or just somewhat dissatisfied?</p>	<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> Very dissatisfied 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Somewhat dissatisfied</p>
<p>d. Why is that?</p>	<p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>

- 1 Question 28a determines whether or not the person was satisfied with the treatment or care given by the doctor on that date.

If the response to this question is "Dissatisfied," mark that box and go to question 28c.
- 2 Ask question 28b only if "Satisfied" is reported in answer to question 28a. Mark either the "Very satisfied" box and go to 29 or the "Somewhat satisfied" box and go to question 28d.
- 3 Ask question 28c if "Dissatisfied" is reported in answer to question 28a. Mark the appropriate answer box and go next to question 28d.
- 4 In question 28d, enter verbatim the answer given by the respondent on the lines provided. If more than one reason is given, enter all of the reasons reported.

G Questions 3-5, Nonmedically Attended Condition Supplement

Most of the questions on Form HIS-1B are the same as those for HIS-1A. The exceptions are given below:

3

Question 3, Received Advice

3

3a. Did you ask anyone for advice about this condition, such as a nurse, druggist, relative, friend, or someone else?	1 Y		2 N(4)			
b. Who was this?	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Nurse	2 <input type="checkbox"/> Druggist	3 <input type="checkbox"/> Relative (Household member)		4 <input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify <u>7</u>	
c. Did you ask anyone else for advice? Y (Reask 3b and c) N			4 <input type="checkbox"/> Relative (Non-household member)			
			5 <input type="checkbox"/> Friend			
Ask for each column marked in Q. 3b:						
d. Did -- advise you to see a doctor?	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N
e. Did -- advise you to take some medicine?	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N
f. Did -- advise you on some other type of treatment?	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N	1 Y 2 N
g. Did -- give you any other advice?	Y 0 N (Next col.)	Y 0 N (Next col.)	Y 0 N (Next col.)	Y 0 N (Next col.)	Y 0 N(4)	Y 0 N(4)
h. What advice did -- give you?						
	(Reask g)		(Reask g)		(Reask g)	

1 Question 3 on the HIS-1B is the same as question 4 on the HIS-1A except that the phrase "Before you talked to a doctor about this condition" is omitted.

④

Question 4, Expect to Talk to Doctor

④

4. Do you expect to see or talk to a doctor
about this . . . ?

1 Y(5b)

2 N

9 DK

- 1 This question determines if the person expects to see or talk to a doctor about this condition. Circle the appropriate response. In those rare cases where "In interview week" and "Never" have been marked in question 2 on this Condition page, circle "Y" without asking the question.

Question 5, Why Didn't See a Doctor

<p>5a. We are interested in the various reasons why people do not go to doctors. Please tell me whether any of the following statements were reasons why you didn't see or talk to a doctor about this condition -</p>	<p>A. Did you not see a doctor (did you wait) because you couldn't get an appointment or the doctor was not available? . 1 Y 2 N</p>
<p>b. We are interested in the various reasons why people wait before going to a doctor. Please tell me whether any of the following statements were reasons why you waited <u>(time)</u> to see or talk to a doctor about this condition -</p>	<p>B. Because you didn't have the money? 1 Y 2 N</p>
	<p>C. Because you didn't have a way to get to the doctor? 1 Y 2 N</p>
	<p>D. Did you not see a doctor (did you wait) because you felt the doctor couldn't do anything for the condition? . 1 Y 2 N</p>
	<p>E. Because you felt you could treat the condition yourself? 1 Y 2 N</p>
	<p>F. Because you didn't want to bother the doctor? 1 Y 2 N</p>
	<p>G. Did you not see a doctor (did you wait) because you didn't think it was serious enough? 1 Y 2 N</p>
	<p>H. Because you feel uncomfortable with doctors or have a fear of doctors? 1 Y 2 N</p>
	<p>I. Did you not see a doctor (did you wait) for any other reason? 1 Y 2 N(K)</p>
	<p>J. What was the reason? (1) _____ (Reask I) (2) _____ (Reask I)</p>
	<p>If all "N's" in A-I ask; otherwise, go to Q.5c: K. Why did you (not/wait to) see or talk to a doctor about this . . .? Any other reason? (1) _____ (2) _____</p>
<p>PROBE IF RESPONSE IS INAPPROPRIATE:</p>	
<p>PROBE IF RESPONSE IS INAPPROPRIATE:</p>	
<p>If 2 or more reasons given in statements A-K, ask; otherwise mark box:</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Only 1 reason</p>
<p>c. Which of these reasons would you say was the MAIN reason for (not seeing/waiting to see) a doctor for this condition?</p>	<p>01 A 04 D 07 G 10 J(2) 13 K(1) 16 K(4)</p>
<p>Circle the appropriate statement letter in the space to the right.</p>	<p>02 B 05 E 08 H 11 J(3) 14 K(2)</p>
	<p>03 C 06 F 09 J(1) 12 J(4) 15 K(3)</p>

Why Didn't See a Doctor (Continued)

- 1 If "N" or "DK" in question 4, ask 5a. When asking questions A-K, do not include the parenthetical phrase, "did you wait."
- 2 If "Y" is circled in question 4, ask 5b. When asking questions A-K, use the parenthetical phrase "did you wait" if "Y" is circled in question 4. The "Time" referred to is the length of time since the condition was first noticed until the time of interview. Omit "Time" if a doctor was seen during interview week.
- 3 In question 5c, use the phrase "not seeing" if "N" or "DK" is circled in question 4. Use the phrase "Waiting to see" if "Y" is circled in question 4.

H Still Have Condition, Respondent, and Type of Interview

(29) & (6) Question 29 or Question 6, Still Have Condition (29) & (6)

29. Do you still have the . . . ?	1 Y	-2 N
-----------------------------------	-----	------

- 1 Question 29 on the HIS-1A is the same as question 6 on the HIS-1B.
Ask the question and circle the appropriate answer on either supplement.

HI

(RA) (RB)

Item RA or RB, Respondent

(RA) (RB)

RA RESPONDENT	Show who responded for this supplement. If other than self-respondent, show who responded for him.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Responded for self Person _____ was respondent.
	If other than self-respondent, give reason for accepting a proxy.	0 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 19 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Mentally incompetent 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Physically incompetent 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Away from home during interview period

- 1 Item RA on the HIS-1A is the same as item RB on the HIS-1B.

The purpose of this question is to find out who the respondent was for this Condition Supplement. Mark the first part of the question in the same manner as item R of the questionnaire.

- 2 The second part of the question shows the reason a proxy was accepted. Mark the box according to the reason—"Under 19," "Mentally incompetent," "Physically incompetent," or "Away from home during interview period."

(I)

Item I, Type of Interview

(I)

I TYPE OF INTERVIEW	Show how the information on this supplement was obtained.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Completed during initial interview 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Completed by return visit 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Completed by a telephone callback
---------------------------	--	---

- 1 Item I, type of interview is the same on both Condition Supplements.

This question shows how the supplement was completed. Mark the appropriate box.

HI

Interviewer Check Item

GO TO A5, CONDITION PAGE

- 1 After completing item I of this supplement, go to item A5 in the questionnaire for this condition and continue with the remaining questions if the supplement is completed during the initial interview.
- 2 If this supplement is completed by a return visit or telephone callback, complete any remaining supplements.

HIS-100
(1973)

PART E

INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES AND ADMINISTRATIVE

CHAPTER 1. INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES

A How to Begin the Interview

1 Introduce Yourself to the Respondent

a The first step in the interview is to introduce yourself, including these five points:

- 1) Your name.
- 2) The U.S. Bureau of the Census.
- 3) Your Identification Card.
- 4) The fact that it is a health survey.
- 5) U.S. Public Health Service.

a) A suggested introduction is:

"I am _____ from the United States Bureau of the Census; here is my identification (show your identification card). We are taking a health survey for the United States Public Health Service."

b Verify the address with the respondent, and if required, determine "Year built."

c If you are not invited in immediately after you have introduced yourself, and you determine that the household is to be interviewed, you may add, "May I come in?"

2 Ask the First Question as Soon as Possible

a After seating yourself, begin immediately with the first question of the interview: "What is your exact address?" The sooner the respondent begins to participate in the interview, the better. To start off with the interview is much more desirable than to describe the types of questions you are planning to ask.

- b An advance letter (sometimes called the "Dear Friend" letter) is sent out from the Data Collection Center on Monday preceding the week of interview. It is sent only to those households for which a specific street address or mailing address has been obtained. This letter tells the respondent that his household has been selected for inclusion in the sample and briefly explains the general purpose of the survey.
 - 1) Even though the advance letter is sent to inform the household of your visit, you should not ask whether it has been received, or voluntarily supply the respondent with a copy. Drawing attention to the letter might interfere with the introduction as specified above. However, if the respondent questions why you are there, you may use the material in the letter in making your explanation.
- c If persons who are not members of the immediate family are present, suggest to the respondent before continuing that he might prefer to talk to you in a more private place. Even though a respondent might not refuse to be interviewed under these circumstances, the presence of outsiders might cause a reluctance to talk about certain types of illnesses which could result in a loss of information.

3 Explaining the Survey

- a You will find that most respondents will accept your introduction as the reason you are taking the survey. However, there will be a few who will want more information about the survey and you should be prepared to answer their questions. There may be a few others who are reluctant to give information, or who may actually refuse to be interviewed because they don't want to be bothered or because they don't believe the survey has any real value.
- b Purpose of the Survey - If a respondent questions the purpose of the survey, use the explanation on the back of your flashcard booklet. If it is necessary to give an additional explanation, you should base it on the material given in Part A, Chapter 1 of this Manual, using your own words to suit the level of understanding of the respondent.
- c Background of the Health Interview Survey
 - 1) The National Health Survey (of which the Health Interview Survey is a part) was set up by an Act of Congress in 1956. The National Health Survey is supported by both major political parties, by the American Medical Association, and other organizations.

A3

- 2) The National Health Survey is a fact-finding survey only. Everyone realizes the importance of information about people's health and medical care, and they trust the survey to be concerned only with gathering facts about these health problems— and not with how the problems should be solved. Actually, when there are controversies about how to solve some health problem both sides turn to the Health Interview Survey for the facts on the situation because they trust the survey to be unbiased.
- d If the respondent confuses this survey with other census work, or the 10-year Census, explain that this is one of the many special surveys that the Census Bureau is asked to carry out because of its function as an objective fact-finding agency and because of its broad experience in conducting surveys.
 - e Why This Household - This happens to be one of the representative addresses picked. Who lives at the address, and whether or not they have problems with their health, had nothing to do with the selection. Each address represents approximately 1,300 households. Taken as a group, the people living at these sample addresses will represent the total population of the United States in the health statistics produced and published by the Public Health Service.
 - f How Long Will It Take
 - 1) This depends on the number of people in the family and on their health conditions. Do not say that the interview will take only a few minutes.
 - 2) If the respondent states that he has no time right now for an interview, find out when you can come back. However, always assume (without asking) that the respondent has the time right now unless he tells you otherwise.

- g If you have difficulty in obtaining an interview, explain the purpose and importance of the survey, and stress the confidential treatment accorded all information furnished by the respondent. This should be done also at any point during the interview if the respondent should hesitate to answer certain questions.

B Your Own Manner

- 1 Your greatest asset in conducting an interview efficiently is to combine a friendly attitude with a business-like manner. If a respondent's conversation wanders away from the interview, try to cut it off tactfully, preferably by asking the next question on the questionnaire. Overfriendliness and concern on your part about the respondent's personal troubles may actually lead to your obtaining less information.
- 2 It is especially important in this survey that you maintain an objective attitude. Do not indicate a personal opinion about replies you receive to questions, even by your facial expression or tone of voice. Since the illness discussed may be of a personal or serious nature, expressions of surprise, disapproval, or even sympathy on your part may cause respondents to give untrue answers or to withhold information. Your own objectivity about the questions will be the best method for putting the respondent at ease and making him feel free to tell you of the conditions and illnesses in his family.
- 3 Avoid "talking down" to respondents when explaining terms but give as direct and simple explanations as possible.

C How to Ask the Questions

- 1 Ask the Questions in the Order Specified - If you change the order, it is likely that both you and the respondent will become confused. This is especially true of the health questions, which refer to different periods of time. Asking the questions out of order would force the respondent to keep jumping back and forth between time periods and would invite confusion.

C2

- 2 Complete the Condition, Doctor Visits, and Hospital pages after all of the probe questions on conditions, doctor visits, and hospitalizations have been asked for each related member of the household. Going back and forth between the probe questions and the various pages would be the "hard way" to conduct the interview and it is certain that if you fail to follow the correct interviewing sequence you would not remember to ask every question for every person.
- 3 Information Given Out of Turn or Volunteered - Sometimes respondents will start describing the health of the family in answer to the very first question and will cover their own illnesses and those of other family members in such a way that it is difficult to keep straight which person has which condition. When this happens, you should explain your problem to the respondent, namely, that you cannot keep up with him in recording the information and, at the same time, be sure that you are recording accurately what he says. Then, ask him to permit you to ask the questions as they appear so that he won't need to give the information more than once.
 - a If, however, a single condition is volunteered (reported not in response to any question or not in answer to the content of the particular question asked), a Condition page is required for it if it meets the requirements of "Conditions to be entered in C2" in Chapter 3.
- 4 Ask Each Question as Instructed - The wording and order of each question have been tested in actual interviewing and have been carefully designed to obtain the desired information. Therefore, the uniformity and value of the final results depend on all interviewers asking the questions in the same order and with the same wording.
 - a Avoid Asking Questions Unnecessarily - It is bad interviewing practice to ask a question when the respondent has already provided you with the specific answer. It may confuse the respondent, or even antagonize him, and may result in loss of information for later questions in the interview.
 - b If you are sure of the specific answer, you may make the appropriate entry without asking the question. However, if you are not sure about the earlier answer, it is good interviewing practice to verify the answer by saying something like: "I believe you told me earlier that a motor vehicle was involved in the accident, is this correct?"

5 Avoid Influencing the Respondent

- a Experience in other studies has shown that respondents tend to agree with what they think you expect them to say, even though the facts in the case may be different. Therefore, you must avoid "leading" the respondent by adding words to the questions or making slight changes in them that might indicate an answer you expect to hear.
- b Even slight changes which may seem to make no apparent difference can prove harmful and should be avoided. For example, the question, "During those two weeks did you stay in bed because of any illness or injury?" is greatly changed in meaning when changed to, "You didn't stay in bed during those two weeks because of any illness or injury, did you?" The question, "What did the doctor say it was? Did he give it a medical name?" would have a different meaning if changed to, "Did the doctor say you had glaucoma?"
- c Changes in question wording such as these suggest answers to the respondent and must be avoided. In an effort to be helpful the respondent may say, "Yes, that was it" or "That is true" or "That sounds about right;" whereas, the facts may have been quite different.
- d Sometimes the respondent may not know the answers to the questions, and if this is the case, record the fact that he doesn't know.

6 Listen to the respondent until he finishes his statement. Failure to do so can result in your putting down incorrect or incomplete entries. The two most common types of errors made in this regard are:

- a Failure to listen to the last half of the sentence because you are busy recording the first half.
- b Interrupting the respondent before he has finished, especially if the respondent hesitates. A respondent often hesitates when trying to recollect some fact, and you should allow sufficient time for this to be done. Also, people will sometimes answer "I don't know" at first, when actually they are merely considering a question. When you think that this may be the situation, wait for the respondent to finish the statement before repeating the question or asking an additional question.

C7

- 7 Repeat the Question - The respondent may not always understand the question when it is first asked, and sometimes you can tell from the answer that the question has not been understood. In this case, repeat the question using the same phrasing as you used originally. This should not prove to be embarrassing since what you said the first time was not heard or understood. Frequently the respondent is capable of understanding the question but has missed a word or two. If you think it is helpful, you can preface the repetition of the question by a phrase, such as "I see," "Oh, yes," and the like, and then repeat the actual question.
- 8 Repeat the Answer - Sometimes it is helpful to repeat the respondent's answer and then pause expectantly. Often this will bring out additional information on the subject. It is also useful as a check on your understanding of what has been said, especially if the statements or comments given have not been entirely clear. For example, "Including your doctor visit last week, that makes three times during the past two weeks?"
- 9 Do Not "Practice Medicine"
 - a Do not try to decide yourself whether or not any member of the household is ill. If a person mentions some condition but makes light of it or expresses doubt that he was "ill," enter the condition on the questionnaire anyway and ask the appropriate questions about it.
 - b Do not attempt to diagnose a respondent's illness from his symptoms, or to substitute names of diseases for the respondent's own description of the trouble. If a respondent's answer to a question is not specific or detailed enough, ask additional questions in accordance with instructions in paragraph E below. However, the final entry must always represent what the respondent said, in his or her own words.
- 10 Pacing the Interview
 - a Try to avoid hurrying the interview even under trying circumstances. If the respondent senses that you are in a rush to complete the questions and get out of the house, she will probably cooperate by omitting important health information which she might feel would take too much time to explain and record.

- b Maintaining a calm, unhurried manner and asking the questions in an objective and deliberate way will do much to promote an attitude of relaxed attention on the part of the respondent.
- 11 The flashcard booklet must be used for various parts of the interview. To keep the interview moving smoothly, learn how to handle the booklet. Also, have a second flashcard booklet for the respondent's use so that the necessity of passing the flashcard booklet back and forth can be reduced to a minimum.

D Asking Additional Questions (Probing)

1 When to Ask Additional Questions

- a Sometimes a person will give you an answer which does not furnish the kind of information you need or one which is not complete. Ask additional questions in such cases, being careful to encourage the respondent to do the explaining without suggesting what the explanations might be. Ask as many questions as necessary to satisfy yourself that you have obtained complete and accurate information insofar as the respondent is able to give it to you.
- b Be sure to keep asking additional questions until you have a complete picture and all the pertinent details.
- c However, do not "over-probe." If the respondent says she does not know the answer to a question, do not try to insist that she give some answer. This might irritate the respondent, and also make her wonder about our interest in accurate responses.

2 How to ask Additional Questions

- a Ask in such a way that you obtain the information required without suggesting specific answers to the respondent. For example, "Please explain that a little more," "Please describe what you mean," or "What was the operation for?" Fit the questions to the information which has already been given.

D2

- b In some instances you may need to suggest specific alternatives to the respondent when general phrases have not been successful in obtaining the information. This is also an acceptable method for asking additional questions, provided the respondent is never given a single choice. Any items specifically suggested to the respondent must always consist of two or more choices. The examples below illustrate both acceptable and unacceptable methods for asking additional questions.

Acceptable

Not acceptable

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1) Can you tell me the approximate number of days? | Would you say it was six days? |
| 2) You said you first noticed the condition about a year ago. Was it more than 12 months ago or less than 12 months ago? | Was it more than a year ago? |
| 3) Do you all live and eat together? | Are you all one household? |
| 4) Does she live the greater part of the year here or at her sister's home? | Is she a member of this household? |
| 5) What kind of asthma is it? | Is it bronchial asthma? |
- c The "Not acceptable" questions in examples 3) and 4) show an interviewer who is unable to apply Census rules for determining the composition of a household, and expects the respondent (who doesn't know the Census rules) to make the decision.
- d The "Not acceptable" questions in examples 1) and 5) illustrate an invitation to the respondent to just say "Yes" without giving any thought to the question.

- e The "Acceptable" question in example 2) illustrates a proper way to give the respondent an opportunity to tie an event to a particular period of time. The "Not acceptable" question is again an invitation to the respondent to say "Yes."

E Recording Information Correctly

Recording information correctly is just as important a part of the interview as asking the questions correctly. This involves writing clearly and plainly, recognizing in advance the amount of space allotted for descriptive entries and adjusting the size of your writing to fit into the space provided. If additional description is required, make free use of the footnote space. Be careful not to leave blank spaces where they should be filled in.

- 1 Use a black lead pencil or ball point pen.
- 2 Use "DK" for "don't know" only to indicate that the respondent does not know the answer to a particular question. Do not use it to fill answers for questions that you may have overlooked at the time of interview.
- 3 If, after an interview, you discover blanks in the questionnaire for questions which should have been asked, leave the items blank.

F Review of Work

- 1 At Close of Interview - Look over the questionnaire while you are in the house and with the respondent so that you can ask any additional questions that are needed. Check to be sure:
 - a A Condition page has been completed for each condition listed in item C2.
 - b All required Condition Supplements have been completed. If not, the column numbers of persons requiring return visits or calls should be entered in item 20a of the Household page.
 - c A two-week doctor visits column has been completed for each doctor visit or call recorded in item C1.
 - d A Hospital column has been completed for each hospital/nursing home stay recorded in item C1.
 - e The Preventive Care page has been completed for each person.
 - f A line of Table M has been completed for each prescribed medicine obtained during the two-week period prior to the interview.

F1

- g A line of Table P has been completed for each terminated pregnancy reported during the past 12 months.
- h All "person" information has been recorded on the Person pages for each household member.
- i Dates and times for return calls are entered on the Household page.

2 Prior to Transmittal

- a Review the Household pages for completeness. Verify that the following items have been filled correctly:

1) Extra Units

- 1 through 5 (Except serial number.)
- 6
- 7 (Ask or Do NOT Ask box must be marked same as for original unit. Year built boxes marked, if required.)
- 8
- 10 (RURAL or URBAN box must be marked same as for original unit.)
- 11 through 12 (If required.)
- 13 through 20
- Item E

2) Nonrelated Household Members

- 1 through 5
- 6b
- 15 through 20

3) More Than One Questionnaire for Related Household Members

- 1 through 5
- 17

4) Type A Noninterview

- 1 through 10
- 12a-c (As applicable.)
- 17 through 19

5) Type B Noninterview

1 through 10
 12a-c (As applicable.)
 17 through 19

6) Type C Noninterview

1 through 6a
 6c (If required.)
 9c (If checked.)
 17 through 19

- b When you review your questionnaires, do not enter any information which should have been furnished by the respondent and recorded during the interview.

G "Thank You" Letters

The "Thank You" letters are signed by the Surgeon General of the U.S. Public Health Service. A 1973 calendar has been printed on the back of the "Thank You" letter for reference for nonsample persons during callbacks for the Condition Supplement.

- 1 Leave one of these at each household after the interview has been completed. The letter thanks the respondent briefly for his cooperation and can be shown by the person interviewed to other members of the household who were not at home at the time of your call.
- 2 In leaving the letter, say something, such as: "Here is a letter of appreciation from the U.S. Public Health Service," or "Here is a letter from the Public Health Service thanking you for your cooperation in this survey."

H Use of Telephone

Use a local telephone wherever practicable. Telephone only:

- 1 To make appointments.
- 2 To obtain one or two items of information for which the respondent has specifically invited you to telephone later.
- 3 To complete the Condition Supplement(s) for nonsample persons.
- 4 Consult your Administrative Handbook on use of long distance calls.

CHAPTER 2. ADMINISTRATIVE

A Transmittal of Materials

- 1 Transmit all "materials" for a segment to the DCC together, in the same package. These include all questionnaires (completed interviews and final noninterviews), and the Segment Folder.
- 2 Mail the materials on the day you make your last call, that is, complete your last interview, in the (each) segment, without exception.
- 3 If you have picked up an "extra" unit(s), enter "Extra" in the serial number column of the "Record of Transmittal" on the Segment Folder, following the serial numbers for questionnaires received from your office.
- 4 Enter the date you are mailing the "materials" for the segment in the Segment Folder in the "Date of Shipment" column opposite serial number "01."
- 5 If, in unusual circumstances, you are permitted to complete any questionnaires after interview week, enter the following notation in the lower left-hand corner of the mailing envelope: "Late transmittal for Week ____" (enter the appropriate interview week number, for example, 01, 02, etc.).

APPENDIX A TO PART E

CONFIDENTIAL NATURE OF INFORMATION COLLECTED
IN NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEYS

- 1 General - National Health Surveys are conducted for the U.S. Public Health Service by the Bureau of the Census.
- 2 Nondisclosure of Information - The Health Interview Survey involves obtaining on a continuing basis details of the personal health records of a large number of individuals throughout the Nation. The Public Health Service has given assurance to the public that information identifying the individual will be held strictly confidential, will be used solely by persons engaged in and only for, the purposes of the survey, and will not be disclosed or released to other persons or for any other purpose. Bureau of the Census employees will observe this assurance of confidentiality and are subject to the Public Health Service as well as Department of Commerce and Bureau of the Census laws against unauthorized disclosure.
- 3 Subpoena of Records - In the event of a record collected in the Health Interview Survey being subpoenaed, any Bureau employee upon whom such subpoena is served will communicate with the Director of the Census through your Data Collection Center. Action to satisfy such subpoena will be taken only as authorized by Public Health Service Regulations, Section 1.108 of Title 42, Code of Federal Regulations.
- 4 Penalties for Unauthorized Disclosure or Falsification - Unauthorized disclosure of individual information collected in the National Health Surveys is punishable by a fine of up to \$1,000, or imprisonment up to one year, or both (18 U.S.C. 1905). Deliberate falsification by an employee of any information in the survey is punishable by a fine up to \$10,000, or imprisonment up to five years, or both (18 U.S.C. 10001).

APPENDIX B TO PART E

DIAGNOSTIC ERROR CODES

<u>Error Code</u>	<u>Definition</u>
01	"Present effects" not given on Condition page but "old" operation entered in question 3.
02	"Condition" which was reason for "current" operation (-3 mos.), laboratory tests, surgery, observation, etc., not given on same Condition page, or "condition" which was reason for operation, laboratory tests, surgery, observation, etc., not given in same hospital column. For example, "stomach operation" but no entry of reason for operation; or the results of tests or final diagnosis not given with no entry to indicate results or final diagnosis not known. If code 02 is assigned, assign no other code.
03	Question 3a of Condition page or question 6 of Hospital page "DK" or left blank; only "part of body" is entered; or "part of body" entered with only very vague description of condition, for example, "bad back," "stomach bothers," "limps," "heart failure," etc., (with no indication as to what is wrong); or "Condition on Card C" box marked for a condition which is not on Card C. If code 03 is assigned, assign no other code.
04	"Cause" not given in question 3b, Condition page or question 6; Hospital page, for a condition other than cancer.
05	"Kind" (or "Manifestation") not given in question 3c, Condition page or question 6, Hospital page, for the conditions specified in question 3c.
06	"Effects" (or "Manifestation") not given in question 3d, Condition page for <u>allergy</u> or <u>stroke</u> . "Effects" (or "Manifestation") not given in question 6, Hospital page, for allergy.
07	"Part of body" affected inadequate or not given in question 3e, Condition page or question 6, Hospital page, for the specified conditions or impairments.
08	Accident questions (20-24 Condition page) not filled for an injury or for a condition due to an accident or injury. Footnote entry, "Same accident as condition __," is acceptable.

Error Code

Definition

- 09 "Part of body" not given or inadequate in question 21a or in question 21b, Condition page or question 6, Hospital page, for an accident or injury.
- 10 Inadequate description of "kind of injury" in 21a, Condition page for accidents or injuries which happened less than three months ago. Inadequate description of "Kind of injury" and/or "Present effects" in question 6, Hospital page.
- 11 "Present effects" inadequate or not given in 21b, Condition pages, for injury which happened before three months ago.
- 12 Question 10 not asked for persons six years old or over when eye condition reported on Condition page.
- 14 Impossible date or omission in question 2, Hospital page.
- 15 Omission or inconsistent entries in questions 4-5c of Hospital page.
- 16 Condition page not filled for condition reported on Hospital page only, and condition is in question 31, or there were one or more nights in question 5b, Hospital page.
- 17 Condition page not filled for condition reported on Two-Week Doctor Visits page only.
- 18 Positive responses in probe questions 4-9, 10 and/or 16 and no entry in item C2.
- 19 Limitation reported in probe questions 20-26 and no entry in item C2.
- 20 Condition page not filled for a condition recorded in item C2.
- 21 No separate Condition page filled when more than one condition from question 31 (and present during past 12 months) is on a single Condition page or when a double entry is in question 3a and no separate Condition page has been filled.
- 22 Positive responses to probe questions 28-30 and no entry in item C1.
- 23 Hospital page not filled for hospitalization reported in item C1.